<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>WinCC V7.5 Installation / Release Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>What's new in WinCC V7?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>WinCC Documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Migration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Diagnostics of WinCC with APDiag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Licensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Performance Data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Print of the Online Help

09/2018
A5E45518509-AA
Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

**DANGER**
indicates that death or severe personal injury will result if proper precautions are not taken.

**WARNING**
indicates that death or severe personal injury may result if proper precautions are not taken.

**CAUTION**
indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

**NOTICE**
indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by personnel qualified for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

**WARNING**
Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.
## Table of contents

1. **WinCC V7.5 Installation / Release Notes** ................................................................. 9
   - 1.1 WinCC Installation Notes ..................................................................................... 9
   - 1.1.1 WinCC installation instructions ....................................................................... 9
   - 1.1.2 Scope of delivery ............................................................................................... 9
   - 1.1.3 SIMATIC WinCC: Product compatibility and supported functions .................. 11
   - 1.1.4 Licenses and Licensing ..................................................................................... 11
   - 1.1.5 Activating and testing ASIA licenses ............................................................... 14
   - 1.1.6 WinCC installation requirements ................................................................. 16
   - 1.1.6.1 WinCC Installation Requirements ............................................................. 16
   - 1.1.6.2 Hardware requirements for installing WinCC ................................................. 17
   - 1.1.6.3 Software requirements for installing WinCC .................................................. 19
   - 1.1.6.4 Microsoft SQL Server for WinCC .............................................................. 24
   - 1.1.6.5 Notes on Data and System Security ......................................................... 25
   - 1.1.6.6 Access rights in the operating system ......................................................... 27
   - 1.1.6.7 How to Adapt the Windows Security Policies .............................................. 33
   - 1.1.7 Installing WinCC ............................................................................................. 33
   - 1.1.7.1 Installing WinCC ......................................................................................... 33
   - 1.1.7.2 How to Install MS Message Queuing ......................................................... 34
   - 1.1.7.3 How to Install WinCC .................................................................................. 36
   - 1.1.7.4 How to Install Supplementary Components Later ..................................... 40
   - 1.1.7.5 How to Install Supplementary Languages ............................................... 41
   - 1.1.7.6 Configure automatic installation of WinCC ............................................... 42
   - 1.1.8 Uninstalling WinCC ....................................................................................... 44
   - 1.1.9 Upgrading WinCC .......................................................................................... 46
   - 1.1.9.1 Upgrading WinCC ...................................................................................... 46
   - 1.1.9.2 How to Perform an Upgrade Installation .................................................... 47
   - 1.1.10 Overview: Notes on operation ..................................................................... 49
   - 1.2 WinCC Release Notes ......................................................................................... 50
   - 1.2.1 Release Notes ................................................................................................. 50
   - 1.2.2 Notes on operation .......................................................................................... 50
   - 1.2.2.1 Notes on operation ...................................................................................... 50
   - 1.2.2.2 Information on the Windows operating system ........................................... 52
   - 1.2.2.3 Information on the database system .......................................................... 55
   - 1.2.2.4 Information on network technology and UPS ......................................... 56
   - 1.2.3 Notes on WinCC ............................................................................................ 61
   - 1.2.3.1 General information on WinCC and configurations ................................. 61
   - 1.2.3.2 Information on WinCC CS ......................................................................... 65
   - 1.2.3.3 Information on WinCC runtime ................................................................. 67
   - 1.2.3.4 Information on Smart tools ........................................................................ 69
   - 1.2.3.5 Information on process communication ..................................................... 70
   - 1.2.3.6 Remote access and Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) ............................. 72
   - 1.2.4 Notes on WinCC Redundancy ....................................................................... 74
   - 1.2.5 Notes on Process Control Options .............................................................. 75
   - 1.3 WinCC/Connectivity Pack Installation Notes ....................................................... 78
   - 1.3.1 Connectivity Pack licensing ......................................................................... 78
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2 How to Install MS Message Queueing</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3 Installation of the Connectivity Pack Server</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.4 Installation of the Connectivity Pack Client</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 WinCC/Connectivity Pack Release Notes</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.1 Information on the Connectivity Pack</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 WinCC/DataMonitor Installation Notes</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1 Requirements of installing DataMonitor</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.2 User rights for installing the DataMonitor client</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.3 Installing the Internet Information Service (IIS)</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.4 Installing DataMonitor</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.5 DataMonitor licensing</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 WinCC/DataMonitor Release Notes</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.1 Notes about DataMonitor</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 WinCC/WebNavigator Installation Notes</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.1 General information on the WebNavigator installation</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.2 WebNavigator installation requirements</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.2.1 Hardware and software requirements for WebNavigator</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.2.2 Licensing WebNavigator</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.2.3 Requirements for the Use of Terminal Services</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.3 Installing a WebNavigator server</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.3.1 Overview: Installing the WebNavigator server</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.3.2 Installing the Internet Information Server (IIS)</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.3.3 Installing the WebNavigator server</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.4 Installing the WebNavigator client</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.4.1 Installing the WebNavigator client</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.4.2 User rights and user groups for WebNavigator clients</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.4.3 Internet Explorer settings (WebNavigator client)</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.4.4 Installation from the DVD (WebNavigator client)</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.4.5 Installation via the Intranet/Internet (WebNavigator client)</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.5 Installing the WebNavigator diagnostics client</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.6 WebNavigator Demo Project</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7.7 Uninstalling the WebNavigator</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8 WinCC/WebNavigator Release Notes</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8.1 Information about WebNavigator</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9 WinCC/WebUX</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9.1 WebUX licensing</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9.2 Communication: SSL certificate for HTTPS connections</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9.3 Installation of WebUX</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9.4 Configuring the WebUX website</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10 Service and Support</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10.1 Warnings</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10.2 Customer support</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10.3 Support request</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 What's new in WinCC V7?</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 What is new in WinCC V7?</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Supported operating systems</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Licensing</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Improvements in the performance and efficient configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Function extensions in case of safe operation of the plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Extended functionality for communication and interfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>Advanced functionality when working with process pictures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>WinCC Graphics Designer: Extensions for graphic objects and libraries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>WinCC Graphics Designer: Extended functions for the configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>Extended functionality in Tag Management and Tag Logging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>Extended functionality in the message system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.12</td>
<td>Extended functionality with options for Process Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>Extended functionality for WinCC/WebUX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>Other Innovations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>WinCC Documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>WinCC Documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Tooltips and Status Bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Direct Help (“What's This?”) in WinCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>WinCC Information System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Navigation in the WinCC Information System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Search in WinCC Information System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>Documentation in the Internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Migration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Important differences compared to previous versions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Conditions for Migration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>How to migrate SQL Server 2000 databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>How to migrate the WinCC data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>How to migrate S7 projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>Migrating Multi-User Projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>Additional Steps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>Upgrading a Redundant System in Normal Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9.1</td>
<td>Upgrading a Redundant System in Normal Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9.2</td>
<td>Quick Reference Instructions: Upgrading Redundant Systems in Normal Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9.3</td>
<td>Phase 1: Upgrading the Standby Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9.4</td>
<td>Phase 2: Upgrade WinCC clients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9.5</td>
<td>Phase 3: Upgrading Master Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9.6</td>
<td>Phase 4: Defining Master Server and Completing Upgrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10</td>
<td>Migration Diagnostics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of contents

## 5 Diagnostics of WinCC with APDiag
- 5.1 Runtime Monitoring of Actions ................................................................. 201
- 5.2 Starting ApDiag.exe .................................................................................. 202
- 5.3 ApDiag Menu Commands ...................................................................... 203
  - 5.3.1 Menu Bar Overview ........................................................................ 203
  - 5.3.2 File - Exit ...................................................................................... 204
  - 5.3.3 Diagnostics .................................................................................... 205
   - 5.3.3.1 Start .................................................................................... 205
   - 5.3.3.2 Change ................................................................................ 206
   - 5.3.3.3 Stop ..................................................................................... 207
   - 5.3.3.4 OnFile ................................................................................. 207
   - 5.3.3.5 Profile .................................................................................. 210
   - 5.3.3.6 FillTags ................................................................................. 213
   - 5.3.3.7 Output .................................................................................. 214
- 5.3.4 Output ............................................................................................... 214
- 5.3.4.1 Output On Screen ...................................................................... 214
- 5.3.4.2 Output To File ........................................................................... 215
- 5.3.4.3 Reset Buffer ............................................................................ 215
- 5.3.5 Info .................................................................................................... 215
- 5.3.5.1 FirstAction ............................................................................... 215
- 5.3.5.2 Count of Connections ................................................................. 219
- 5.3.5.3 Count of Actions in RequestQueue ......................................... 219
- 5.3.5.4 Count of TransAction ................................................................. 219
- 5.3.5.5 Count of Actions of each Transaction ...................................... 220
- 5.3.5.6 Count of Tags in each Transaction ............................................ 221
- 5.3.5.7 Count of Actions in Cycle ............................................................ 221
- 5.3.5.8 Count of Functions .................................................................... 222
- 5.3.6 Trace Points - Change Level ............................................................... 223
- 5.3.7 Output Window - Open / Close ......................................................... 224
- 5.4 Appendix .............................................................................................. 226
- 5.4.1 Trace points and their diagnostics level ........................................ 226
- 5.4.2 System messages ............................................................................ 227

## 6 Licensing
- 6.1 Software Has a Value .......................................................................... 231
- 6.2 Overview of the licensing ................................................................. 232
- 6.3 Basic license types and license types in WinCC ................................ 236
- 6.4 WinCC in the Demo Mode ................................................................. 239
- 6.5 How to manage licenses ................................................................. 240
- 6.6 How to Upgrade Licenses ............................................................... 242
- 6.7 Diagnostics of Licensing Problems ................................................. 243
- 6.8 Restore license key .......................................................................... 245

## 7 Performance Data
- 7.1 Performance Data ........................................................................... 247
- 7.2 Configurations .................................................................................. 248
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Graphics System</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>Message system</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Archiving system</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>User archives</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>Reports (Report Designer)</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>Scripting with VBS and ANSI-C</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>Process Communication</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td></td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.1 WinCC Installation Notes

1.1.1 WinCC installation instructions

Contents

This documentation contains important information on the scope of delivery, as well as on the installation and operation of WinCC.

The information contained here takes precedence over the information contained in the manual and online help.

1.1.2 Scope of delivery

Components supplied

WinCC V7.5 is available as a basic package or upgrade package and as a download package "OSD" (Online Software Delivery).

You will receive the following components:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Components 1)</th>
<th>Basic / Upgrade / Download Package</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WinCC V7.5 DVD:</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC V7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC/WebUX V7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC/WebNavigator V7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC/DataMonitor V7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC/Connectivity Pack V7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC/Connectivity Station V7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SQL Server 2016 SP2 for WinCC V7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SIMATIC Logon V1.6 2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Automation License Manager V6.0 SP1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• AS-OS-Engineering V8.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC NET DVD:</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Simatic Net V15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DVD Additional Content:</th>
<th>Basic / Upgrade / Download Package</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• SQL Server Management Studio</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required licenses</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate of License</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Refer to the software requirements in the installation notes and release notes.
2) When you install SIMATIC Logon, a computer restart may be necessary.

### Communication drivers

The communication drivers included in the package do not need an additional license:

- Allen Bradley - Ethernet IP
- Mitsubishi Ethernet
- Modbus TCP/IP
- OPC
- OPC UA 1)
- PROFIBUS DP
- SIMATIC 505 TCPIP
- SIMATIC S5 Ethernet Layer 4
- SIMATIC S5 Profibus FDL
- SIMATIC S5 Programmers Port AS511
- SIMATIC S5 Serial 3964R
- SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite
- SIMATIC S7-1200, S7-1500
- SIMATIC TI Ethernet Layer 4
- SIMATIC TI Serial
- SIMOTION
- System Info

1) You need a Connectivity Pack license for the WinCC OPC UA server.
1.1.3 SIMATIC WinCC: Product compatibility and supported functions

To use the software with other SIMATIC products you must ensure that the product versions match and support the required functions.

- You determine the version compatibility with the compatibility tool.
- Note the additional information on the products and functions

SIMATIC Process Historian

Note which functionality is supported by the SIMATIC Process Historian version that is used in each case. For additional information, refer to the documentation for the SIMATIC Process Historian.

Installing PH-Ready / IS-Ready

You install "PH-Ready" and "IS-Ready" from the "Process Historian / Information Server" DVD.

Compatibility tool

With the compatibility tool, Industry Online Support gives you a function you can use to put together a compatible selection of software products or to check existing configurations for compatibility.

In the following entry you can call the compatibility tool and find additional information on the operation of the tool:


1.1.4 Licenses and Licensing

Introduction

The WinCC software is protected and can only be used in its full measure with a valid license. Each installed software and option used requires a valid license for unrestricted operation of WinCC. The licenses for optional packages must be ordered separately.

You will receive the necessary license keys for the installation of licenses as follows:

- As storage medium with license keys
- Via the Internet (online software delivery)
Licenses which are installed for use in WinCC are transferred from the storage medium to a local drive and are unregistered on the storage medium.

**Note**
Furthermore, the licensee confirms that the software (SW) contains licensed software by Microsoft Corporation or its subsidiaries. Thereby, licensee agrees to be bound by the terms and conditions of the appended license agreement between Microsoft SQL Server and end user, and to fulfill same.

### Notes on license conditions

Please observe the enclosed license conditions, which are also displayed during the installation. You need V7.5 licenses for WinCC V7.5.

The SIMATIC WinCC software is copy-protected against unlicensed use. You can find additional information on licenses and license types under “Licensing” on Page 231 in the WinCC Information System.

Installed licenses are required to enable proper operation of WinCC. If WinCC is installed without licenses, the program will switch to demo mode at start-up.

**Note**
It is not allowed to run WinCC in process mode without a valid license.

### Cumulating licenses

The cumulation of more than one license per component subject to a license is only possible for the following licenses or licenses of the following options:

- WinCC Archive licenses
- WinCC/DataMonitor
- WinCC/WebNavigator
- WinCC/WebUX
- WinCC/IndustrialDataBridge
- WinCC/PerformanceMonitor
- SIMATIC Information Server

Other licenses cannot be cumulated.

### Demo Mode

If a license is missing for one or several components, WinCC will run in demo mode. WinCC also switches to demo mode when the maximum authorized number of process tags or archive tags is exceeded in a project.

In Demo mode, you can use the WinCC software fully for a maximum of one hour. After this period, the operation of WinCC violates the license agreements.
After one hour, the WinCC Explorer and the editors will be closed.

In runtime, the system will request the acquisition of a valid license. This dialog will appear every 10 minutes.

To exit WinCC demo mode, install the required licenses.

Details on demo mode may be found in WinCC Information System under "Licensing".

Microsoft SQL Server 2016

A license is necessary to use the Microsoft SQL Server database. This license is readily available in a licensed and proper installation of WinCC.

The licensed SQL server installed with WinCC may only be used in connection with WinCC. Its use for other purposes requires an additional license. These include, e.g.:

- Use for internal databases
- Use in third-party applications
- Use of SQL access mechanisms that are not provided by WinCC

Uninstalling

After uninstalling WinCC, you also need to remove the "WinCC" SQL server instance:

Select "Control Panel" > "Software" and then select the "Microsoft SQL Server 2016" item for removal.

Installation of Licenses

You may use the Automation License Manager for installation of licenses.

Licenses may be installed during installation of WinCC or after the fact. You will find the Automation License Manager in the Windows start menu in the "Siemens Automation" program group. An after-the-fact installation of a license will take effect upon restart of your computer.

For the installation of licenses, the following requirements must be met:

- The storage medium containing the licenses must not be write protected.
- You can install the RC licenses on a license server for the configuration. You do not have to install the licenses on the local drive.
- Licenses may only be installed on a non-compressed drive.

Note

After uninstalling WinCC, the licenses remain installed on the system.
1.1.5 Activating and testing ASIA licenses

Overview

The license keys for WinCC Runtime and WinCC RC (Runtime and Configuration) are provided on the supplied license storage medium "License Key USB Hardlock".

The licensed ASIA version is executable in parallel to the European version by switching to Unicode.

The "License Key USB Hardlock" (dongle) checks the following conditions:

- WinCC GUI language
- Runtime language
- The Text Library contains an Asian language.
- Asian characters are used in the WinCC project.
- Operating system settings

You can find more information about installing the license under "Licenses and licensing".

Note

It is not allowed to run WinCC in process mode without a valid license.

Installed Languages

A newly created project receives all installed WinCC languages as project languages.

Testing the validity of the licenses

If you start a correctly licensed WinCC version without a connected dongle, the following error message appears:

![WinCC Information]

For this version of WinCC, the license data carrier must be available at the USB interface.

Connect the license data carrier with the USB interface or check your hardware.

The same error message appears after a few minutes if you disconnect the dongle from the computer with a correctly licensed WinCC version.

If this error message does not appear, a non-licensed WinCC version is installed.

No right of usage for WinCC is available in this case. Remove this WinCC version and obtain a legal, licensed version of WinCC V7.
If necessary, contact WinCC Support and provide the serial number of your software version:


You can find the serial number on the "Certificate of License" (CoL).

**Working with the "License Key USB Hardlock"**

Please note the following:

- Do not edit data on the "License Key USB Hardlock". The actions not allowed include:
  - Rename data
  - Delete data
  - Copy data to the "License Key USB Hardlock"
- Do not format the "License Key USB Hardlock".
- Do not remove the "License Key USB Hardlock" from the PC while WinCC is running.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Do not remove the &quot;License Key USB Hardlock&quot; dongle</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you remove the dongle from the computer, an error message is generated and WinCC switches to Demo mode.

If you re-connect the dongle to the computer, the error message disappears and Demo mode is disabled. WinCC works once again in licensed mode.

**See also**

1.1.6 WinCC installation requirements

1.1.6.1 WinCC Installation Requirements

Introduction
You will need special hardware and software for the installation of WinCC. The requirements are described in the chapters "Hardware Requirements for Installation" and "Software Requirements for Installation".

Note
Windows operating system: Avoid changes in system
Windows settings deviating from default can have an effect on operation of WinCC.
Observe this note particularly for the following changes:
- Change of processes and services in Control Panel.
- Changes in Windows Task Manager.
- Changes in Windows registry.
- Changes in Windows security policies.

The first check if certain conditions are met is already executed during the installation of WinCC. The following conditions are checked:
- Operating system
- User Rights
- Graphic Resolution
- Internet Explorer
- MS Message Queuing
- Due Complete Restart (Cold Restart)

Error Messages
If one of these conditions is not met, the WinCC installation will be aborted and an error message will be displayed. For details about the error messages displayed see the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To execute installation properly, restart the com-</td>
<td>The software installed on your computer requires a restart. Before WinCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puter</td>
<td>can be installed, the computer should be restarted once.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This application requires VGA or any higher res-</td>
<td>Check the settings of the connected monitor and upgrade the graphic card,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olution</td>
<td>if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You do not have administrator rights. Log on as</td>
<td>Administrator rights are required for the installation. Please log in to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>administrator.</td>
<td>Windows again as a user with administrator rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Message</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup has detected that uninstallShield is active. Please close uninstallShield and restart Setup.</td>
<td>Close uninstallShield. This message may also indicate that you are lacking administrator rights for this installation. In this case, log on to Windows again as user with administrator rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Microsoft Message Queuing services are not installed.</td>
<td>Install the Microsoft Message Queuing services. To do this, you will need the Windows installation CD. You can find detailed information in the section “Installing Microsoft Message Queuing”.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

- Defining Access Rights in the Operating System (Page 27)
- How to Adapt the Windows Security Policies (Page 33)
- How to Install MS Message Queuing (Page 34)
- Notes on Data and System Security (Page 25)
- Software requirements for installing WinCC (Page 19)
- Hardware requirements for installing WinCC (Page 17)
- Microsoft SQL Server for WinCC (Page 24)

1.1.6.2 Hardware requirements for installing WinCC

Introduction

Certain hardware configuration conditions must be fulfilled for installation.

Hardware requirements

WinCC supports all common IBM/AT-compatible PC platforms.

To efficiently work with WinCC, select a system with the recommended specifications.

Note

Unless noted to the contrary, the same requirements as for servers are applicable to single-user systems.
### Minimum Recommended

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU</strong></td>
<td>Dual core CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Client / single-user system</strong></td>
<td>2.5 GHz</td>
<td>Client / single-user system / server: 2.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Client</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Single-user system</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multi core CPU</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Client</strong></td>
<td>3 GHz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Single-user system / server</strong></td>
<td>3.5 GHz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Work memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Windows 10 (64-bit)</strong></td>
<td>Client: 2 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single-user system: 4 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Windows Server 2012 R2 / Windows Server 2016</strong></td>
<td>4 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Free storage space on the hard disk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>- for the installation of WinCC</strong></td>
<td>Installation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>- for working with WinCC</strong></td>
<td>• Client: 1.5 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Server: &gt; 1.5 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Working with WinCC:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Client: 1.5 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Server: 2 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Installation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Client: &gt; 1.5 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Server: 2 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Working with WinCC:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Client: &gt; 1.5 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Server: 10 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Archive databases may require additional memory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Virtual work memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Virtual work memory</strong></td>
<td>1.5 x RAM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Color depth / Color quality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resolution</strong></td>
<td>800 * 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Highest (32 Bit)</strong></td>
<td>1920 * 1080 (Full HD)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Depending on project size and on the size of archives and packages.
2) WinCC projects should not be stored on compressed drives or directories.
3) Use the recommended value in the area “Total size of swap file for all drives” for “Size of swap file for a specific drive”. Enter the recommended value in both the "Start size" field as well as in the "Maximum size" field.

**Note**

In the case of online configuration, the recommended requirements are valid as the minimum requirement.

### Virtualization

The following virtualization systems are tested:
- Microsoft Hyper-V 2012 R2 / 2016
- VMware ESXi 6.5 / 6.7

**Requirement**

The performance data of the virtual computers must meet the minimum requirements for WinCC clients.
You can find additional information about virtual environments with WinCC at the following URL (entry ID=49368181):


See also

- Defining Access Rights in the Operating System (Page 27)
- Notes on Data and System Security (Page 25)
- Software requirements for installing WinCC (Page 19)

1.1.6.3 Software requirements for installing WinCC

Introduction

Certain requirements concerning operating system and software configuration must be met for the installation.

Note

WinCC is enabled for operation within a domain or workgroup.

Note however that domain group policies and restrictions in the domains may prevent installation. In this case, remove the computer from the domain before installing Microsoft Message Queuing, Microsoft SQL Server and WinCC. Log on to the computer concerned locally with administrator rights. Carry out the installation. Following successful installation, the WinCC computer can be registered in the domain again. If the domain-group policies and domain restrictions do not impair the installation, the computer must not be removed from the domain during installation.

Note however that domain group policies and restrictions in the domain may also hinder operation. If these restrictions cannot be overcome, operate the WinCC computer in a work group. If necessary, contact the domain administrator.

Operating systems

Operating system languages

WinCC is released for the following operating system languages only:

- German
- English
- French
- Italian
- Spanish
- Chinese (Simplified, PR China)
WinCC V7.5 Installation / Release Notes

1.1 WinCC Installation Notes

- Chinese (Traditional, Taiwan)
- Japanese
- Korean
- Multilingual operating system (MUI version)

**Configurations**

When using more than one server, all servers must be operated with a uniform operating system:

Windows Server 2012 R2 or 2016 uniformly Standard or Datacenter edition in each case.

**Single-user systems and clients**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows 10 ¹)</td>
<td>Pro</td>
<td>Standard installation 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enterprise</td>
<td>If you are using Simatic Net, observe the information in the Simatic Net &quot;readme&quot; file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 10 ¹)</td>
<td>Enterprise LTSB (Long-Term Servicing Branch)</td>
<td>Standard installation 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If you are using Simatic Net, observe the information in the Simatic Net &quot;readme&quot; file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹) The currently released build versions of Windows 10 are listed in the Compatibility Tool.

You can also run single-user systems and clients in WinCC multi-user systems on Windows Server 2012 R2 / 2016.

**WinCC Server**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Datacenter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2016</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Datacenter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WinCC server with up to three WinCC clients**

It is also possible to operate a WinCC Runtime server on Windows 10 if you are not running more than three clients.

WinCC ServiceMode is not released for this configuration.

**Note**

**Only enable the terminal server for WinCC/WebNavigator**

WinCC is not suitable for use on a Microsoft terminal server.

You can use the Microsoft terminal server only in connection with the WinCC Web client. Note the installation instructions of the WinCC/WebNavigator.
Virus scanner
You can find information on the use of virus scanners as well as approved virus scanner versions in the WinCC Release Notes under "Notes on operation (Page 50)".

Microsoft Windows Patches / Updates: Compatibility with SIMATIC products
Note the latest information on compatibility of SIMATIC products with Microsoft patches and updates:


Windows computer name
Do not change the computer name
Do not change the Windows computer name after installing WinCC installation.

Illegal characters
The following characters are not permitted in the computer name:
- . , ; : ! ? " ' ^ ` ~ _
- + = / \ @ * # $ % & § °
- ( ) [ ] { } < >
- Space character
Note the following:
- Only uppercase relevant
- The first character must be a letter.

Microsoft Message Queuing services
WinCC requires Microsoft Message Queuing services. You can find detailed information in the section "Installing Microsoft Message Queuing".

Microsoft .NET Framework
Before installing WinCC ensure that .NET Framework is activated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>As of Windows 10</th>
<th>This version may be required for the installation of the SQL Management Studio:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2</td>
<td>Microsoft .NET Framework 4.6.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) If necessary, install the .NET Framework version subsequently.
Internet Explorer - requirements

You can find the browser requirements for WinCC options in the respective installation notes for the option.

You need Microsoft Internet Explorer to open the WinCC online help. Recommended versions:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer V11.0 (32-bit)

If you wish to fully use WinCC's HTML Help, you must permit the use of JavaScript under "Internet Options" in Internet Explorer.

**Note**
Do not disable Internet Explorer.

Operation with multiple network adapters

When a server is used with several network adapters, read the notes in the WinCC Information System under "Configurations > Distributed Systems > System behavior in Runtime > Special features of communication using a server with several network adapters".

Adapting security policies

The operating system must permit the installation of unsigned drivers and files. Detailed information is available in the section "Adapting Security Policies under Windows".

**Note**
An update of the operating system is not permitted if WinCC is started. Start the computer again after updating the operating system.

Checking the "Path" environment variable

Before starting WinCC, you should check the entries in the "Path" environment variable.

A few programs insert paths containing quotation marks in the environment variable. These paths can prevent WinCC from starting or limit its functionality. The paths with quotation marks can also interfere with the software of other manufacturers.

Open the "System properties" dialog in the Control Panel. Open the "Environment variables" dialog using the "Environment variables" button on the "Advanced" tab, and display the value of the "Path" system tag.

If the "Path" system tag contains paths with quotation marks, reorder the entries so that these paths are called last.
Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS)

Before installing the following components or options, you must first install the Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS):

- WinCC OPC XML DA Server
- WinCC/DataMonitor
- WinCC/WebNavigator
- WinCC/WebUX

The IIS settings for the WinCC/DataMonitor, WinCC/WebNavigator and WinCC/WebUX options can be found in the respective installation notes.

WinCC OPC XML DA Server: Configuring the settings

In Windows Server 2012 R2 / 2016, configure the settings in the Server Manager using the "Web server (IIS)" role in the associated role services.

Select the following settings:

- Web Management Tools:
  - IIS Management Service
  - IIS Management Console
  - IIS Management Scripts and Tools
  - Compatibility with IIS Metabasis and IIS 6 configuration
  - Compatibility with WMI for IIS 6
- WWW Services > Common HTTP Features or Shared HTTP Features:
  - Standard document
  - Static content
- WWW Services > Application Development Features:
  - .NET extendibility
  - ASP
  - ASP.NET
  - ISAPI Extensions
  - ISAPI Filters
- WWW Services > Security:
  - Request Filtering
  - Basic Authentication
  - Windows Authentication
Note
Always install Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS) with ASP.NET and ASP
Always install ASP.NET and ASP when you install the Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS).

WinCC OPC XML DA Server: Firewall settings
The web service of the WinCC OPC XML DA server communicates over port: 80 (HTTP).
Make sure that the firewall rule "WWW services (HTTP)" is selected and activated for the required network areas.

See also
Microsoft SQL Server for WinCC (Page 24)

1.1.6.4 Microsoft SQL Server for WinCC
WinCC requires Microsoft SQL Server 2016 SP2 in the 64-bit version:
- Microsoft SQL Server 2016 SP2 64-bit Standard Edition
- Microsoft SQL Server 2016 SP2 64-bit Express Edition
SQL Server is included automatically in the WinCC installation.

Microsoft SQL Server 2016 SP2
The corresponding user rights must be set up for accessing the SQL Server data. Read the notes in the section "Defining access rights in the operating system (Page 27)".
Note the information on licensing of the SQL Server under "Licenses and licensing".
When you install WinCC/Connectivity Pack, the required connectivity components are installed along with the Microsoft SQL Server.

SQL server instance "WinCC"
During installation, a new "WinCC" instance with the required settings is created with Microsoft SQL Server.
This instance is always installed in English. The language in which existing SQL server instances have been installed has no effect on this. Existing instances are not affected by the Service Pack.

"WinCC" instance after removing WinCC
When WinCC is removed, the "WinCC" SQL server instance remains installed and must be removed manually for licensing reasons.
Installation of SQL Server Express

SQL-Express is installed in the following cases:

- Installation of "WinCC client"
- Installation of the WinCC V7 demo version

**Requirement for the installation of SQL-Express**
The Windows user name of the user performing the installation must not contain any space characters.

SQL Server Management Studio

The SQL Server Management Studio is no longer part of the SQL Server installation.
If you want to install SQL Server Management Studio, use the provided "Additional Content" DVD.

See also

- Defining Access Rights in the Operating System (Page 27)
- Software requirements for installing WinCC (Page 19)
- Access rights in the operating system (Page 27)

1.1.6.5 Notes on Data and System Security

Introduction

System security when using WinCC can be increased by implementing simple measures.
You can find additional information in the "WinCC Release Notes > Notes on Operation > AUTOHOTSPOT".

You can find information on the remote access under "WinCC Release Notes > Notes on WinCC > Remote access and Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) (Page 72)".
Information on write access for WinCC project folders can be found under "Access rights in the operating system > Defining Access Rights in the Operating System (Page 27)".

Activating WinCC remote communication

On WinCC systems remote communication is disabled by default after the installation.
For the following scenarios you must activate the remote communication of the participating computers:

- Client-server communication
- Redundant system
To enable remote access, proceed as follows:

1. Open the communication settings using the shortcut menu of SIMATIC Shell in Windows Explorer.
2. Select the "Remote Communication" option.
3. Configure the encrypted communication in the network: Select the PSK key and the port.
4. Select the network adapter and, if required, the Multicast settings.

**Firewall settings**

To limit the incoming rule for the CCAgent, you can change the parameter "Remote address" from "Any" to "Local subnet".

You can edit the firewall rules in the "Windows Firewall with Advanced Security" dialog.

**Preventing Access to the Operating System Layer in Runtime**

If the Windows Selection dialog is opened in an activated WinCC project, access to the Windows operating system is possible using this function. A Windows Selection dialog is opened, for example, when data is imported or files are selected.

Protect the corresponding function by executing a Permission Check via the User Administrator to prevent unauthorized access to the operating system.

**Preventing access to the Windows toolbar**

You can use the computer properties to prevent the Windows taskbar from being displayed in Runtime. Open the "Parameters" tab in the "Computer properties" dialog and deactivate all the shortcut keys in the "Disable Keys" area.

In addition, deactivate the "Keep the taskbar on top of other windows" setting in Windows.

**Disabling shortcut keys**

If you would like to disable shortcut keys, you must adapt the group policies in the operating system management.

A detailed description of this can be found in the FAQ with entry ID "44027453" in the SIMATIC Customer Online Support:


**Shortcut key <Ctrl+Esc>**

If you disable the <Ctrl+Esc> shortcut key, the following shortcut keys are also disabled in Runtime:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyboard shortcut</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;Windows key+U&gt;</td>
<td>System utility program manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press &lt;Shift&gt; five times</td>
<td>Locking function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press &lt;Shift right&gt; for eight seconds</td>
<td>Impact delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;Alt left+Shift left+Num&gt;</td>
<td>Keyboard mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;Alt left+Shift left+Print&gt;</td>
<td>High contrast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note
The functions can be configured using the Windows Control Panel.
If the functions are activated in the Windows Control Panel before activating WinCC Runtime, they are no longer locked in runtime.

Checklist for technical implementation
You can find additional information on configuring your system in the following document in the "Industry Online Support":


See also
Defining Access Rights in the Operating System (Page 27)
How to Adapt the Windows Security Policies (Page 33)
How to Install WinCC (Page 36)
Notes on operation (Page 50)
Remote access and Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) (Page 72)

Internet: WinCC FAQ 44027453 (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/44027453)

1.1.6.6 Access rights in the operating system

Defining Access Rights in the Operating System

Introduction
To support you in protecting your system, WinCC offers a structured user management:

- Protect your system against unauthorized access.
- Assign each user the required rights.

In order to work with WinCC, certain folders can be enabled for access via the network. For security reasons, you should only assign access rights to these folders to authorized users. You manage access rights via the Windows Standard user groups and user groups created by WinCC.
Access rights specified in WinCC

Following WinCC installation, WinCC automatically establishes the following local groups in Windows User and Group Administration:

- "SIMATIC HMI"
  All users must be members of the "SIMATIC HMI" user group. These members may create local projects, and may process, start, and access these projects remotely. Access to the WinCC database is limited to the minimum rights necessary (read/write). By default, the user who carries out the WinCC installation and the local administrator are members of this group. Additional members must be added manually by an administrator.

- "SIMATIC HMI Viewer"
  These members have read access only to configuration and runtime data in the WinCC database. This group is primarily used for accounts for Web publication services, e.g., IIS (Internet Information Services) account for operation of WinCC WebNavigator.

- Access to folder "<Installation Directory>/WinCC/aplib"
  Following installation, the directory "Installation Directory/WinCC/aplib" named "SCRIPTFCT" is unlocked for the "SIMATIC HMI" user group. This directory contains central libraries for project script functions.

WinCC folder share

With access via folder shares, the folders of a WinCC project are generally read-only.

Access to the WinCC project folders and project data from the network via Windows is read-only.

Release project folder for write access

The "SIMATIC HMI" user group needs full access to the project folders of a server in the following cases:

- Access via scripts or open interfaces, e.g. when using WinCC/ODK
- Access via multiuser engineering
- Access of clients with own project
- Integrated projects (SIMATIC Manager)

To enable full access to the WinCC project folders, disable the following option in the "Project properties" dialog:

- The project directory is only released for read access.

Make sure that full access is restricted to the necessary user groups or users.

You can change the option while runtime is activated.

The change is applied immediately.

User Groups and User Rights

The following overview contains the tasks of the different user groups with the access rights and instructions required to assign these access rights.
WinCC Installation

- Task: WinCC Installation
- Role: Configuration engineer, Administrator
- Authorization: Windows Administrator rights
- Procedure:
  Prior to installation, ensure that you have local administrator rights on the computer.
- Explanation:
  You need local administrator rights to install WinCC.

Preparation for operation

- Task: Access to WinCC
- Role: Configuration engineer, Administrator
- Authorization: Power user rights, Administrator rights
- Procedure:
  After installation, set up the administrative settings as administrator or power user.
- Explanation:
  Power user rights are the minimum requirements for administrative settings, e.g. the authorization of file rights or printer driver settings.
  To delete a WinCC project completely, you must have power user rights, at a minimum.

Local user rights when operating WinCC

- Task: Operator input in Runtime, configuration
- Role: WinCC user (operator, configuration engineer)
- Authorization:
  - Windows group "User"
  - User group "SIMATIC HMI"
- Procedure:
  Add the user to the "SIMATIC HMI" user group and, at a minimum, to the Windows "User" user group.
- Explanation:
  In order to operate WinCC or for remote access to a WinCC project on the client and server, the user must be a member of the "SIMATIC HMI" user group.

Access to distributed systems

- Task: Access to distributed systems
- Role: WinCC user (operator, configuration engineer)
- Authorization: Uniform user groups on all computers
**Access rights for local projects**

- **Task:** Access to projects which were created as follows:
  - Manual copy
  - Duplicate
  - Retrieval
  - Migration
- **Role:** WinCC user (operator, configuration engineer)
- **Authorization:** SIMATIC HMI, SIMATIC HMI Viewer
- **Procedure:**
  Assign full access rights to the project folder for the "SIMATIC HMI" group. To do so, open the project following its creation once as administrator or power user. Alternatively, you can specify access rights in the Windows Computer Management. Even if you want to copy projects with the Project Duplicator you will need the appropriate authorizations. You will either have to grant access to the used folders or duplicate them as main user.
- **Explanation:**
  When a local project is newly created, the members of user groups "SIMATIC HMI" and "SIMATIC HMI Viewer" automatically receive the necessary access rights to the project directory. However, when projects are copied, logged, or migrated, the local authorizations are not transferred but must be reassigned.

**Access rights to system information**

- **Task:** Access to system information via the WinCC channel "System Info"
- **Role:** Operator
- **Authorization:** System monitor user
- **Procedure:**
  Into the Windows group "System monitor user", accept all users who require the following system information of the WinCC channel "System Info":
  - CPU load
  - Status of the export file
- **Explanation:**
  Users with Windows standard user rights do not have access to certain system information.
Including users in the "SIMATIC HMI" user group

Introduction
Include those local users in the "SIMATIC HMI" group whose login permits access to WinCC. You must first create local users to do so. Users of a domain may be directly included in the user group "SIMATIC HMI".

WinCC/WebNavigator: Users of the Web client
When you install the WebNavigator client on the WinCC PC, you must also include the users of the Web client in the user group "SIMATIC HMI" or "SIMATIC HMI VIEWER".

Procedure

1. Open the workstation administration under Windows.
2. Select the entry "Local Users and Groups > Users" in the navigation window. All local users are displayed in the data window.
3. Open the "New User" dialog via the shortcut menu. Create a user account with the same login for each user who is to have access to WinCC.
4. Select the entry "Local Users and Groups > Groups" in the navigation window. All groups are displayed in the data window. Select the "SIMATIC HMI" group.
5. Using the shortcut menu, open the "Add Member" dialog and include those users as members of the "SIMATIC HMI" user group.

Including domain-global user group in the "SIMATIC HMI" user group

Introduction
During operation of a domain, an additional domain-global user group may be created and included as a member of the "SIMATIC HMI" user group.
Requirements

- The domain administrator creates a domain-global user group.
- Within the domain, the domain administrator includes those users in the domain whose login permits access to WinCC.

Procedure

1. Open the workstation administration under Windows.
2. In the navigation window, select the "Local Users and Groups > Groups" entry. The data window displays all groups. Select the group "SIMATIC HMI".
3. Using the pop-up menu, open the "Add Member" dialog and include domain-global user group as members of the "SIMATIC HMI" user group.

Release existing project for "SIMATIC HMI" user group

Introduction

You must first remove the existing release of the project directory if the user group "SIMATIC HMI" has to access an existing user group. Then the project is released again while opening WinCC Explorer.

Procedure

1. Open the workstation administration under Windows.
2. In the navigation window, select the entry "Shared Folders > Shares". The data window displays all unlocked directories.
3. Select the respective project directory and remove the enable through the "Cancel Share" pop-up menu.
4. If you now open the project in WinCC, the project directory is automatically unlocked for the "SIMATIC HMI" user group, and all members of the user group are granted access to the project directory.

Note

The enable name of the directory unlocked by WinCC must not be modified.
1.1.6.7 How to Adapt the Windows Security Policies

Introduction

Before you install WinCC, you must check the operating system settings:

- The system must permit the installation of unsigned drivers and files.

Procedure

1. To open the Windows entry field, select the entry "Run" in the "Windows System" program group.
2. Enter "gpedit.msc" in the input box. The "Local Group Policy Editor" dialog box opens.
3. In the left section of the window under "Policy for local computer", select "Computer Configuration > Administrative Templates > System > Device Installation > Device Installation Restrictions".
4. Check the settings of the security policies below:
   - "Display a custom message when installation is prevented by policy (balloon text)"
   - "Display a custom message when installation is prevented by policy (balloon title)"
   "Not configured" must be set for the policy.

See also

- Notes on Data and System Security (Page 25)
- Defining Access Rights in the Operating System (Page 27)
- Software requirements for installing WinCC (Page 19)
- WinCC Installation Requirements (Page 16)

1.1.7 Installing WinCC

1.1.7.1 Installing WinCC

Introduction

This section describes the installation of WinCC.

Install MS Message Queuing before you install WinCC.
Installation of a WinCC file server

If a WinCC server is set up which is to be used for project data archiving only, only the WinCC file server needs to be installed. You can find more information in the WinCC Information System, in the section "Configurations > Fileserver".

Note

Usage only with administrator rights

If you want to use the Fileserver, you need administrator rights.

Fileserver installation requirements

WinCC V7 and WinCC Fileserver V7 cannot be installed at the same time on one computer.

Installation of WinCC Options

The WinCC DVD contains the following options:

- WinCC/Connectivity Pack / Connectivity Station
- WinCC/DataMonitor
- WinCC/WebNavigator
- WinCC/WebUX

These options require their own licenses.

If you purchase a WinCC option at a later date, you will receive the necessary licenses on a license data carrier. An installation DVD is not supplied. Use the WinCC DVD for installation.

See also

Upgrading WinCC (Page 46)
How to Install Supplementary Components Later (Page 40)
How to Install WinCC (Page 36)
How to Install MS Message Queuing (Page 34)
Hardware requirements for installing WinCC (Page 17)

1.1.7.2 How to Install MS Message Queuing

Introduction

WinCC implements the Message Queuing services from Microsoft. It is a component part of the operating system.
MS Message Queuing is however not included in the standard Windows installation and must be installed separately if required.

---

**Note**

WinCC is enabled for operation within a domain or workgroup.

Note however that domain group policies and restrictions in the domains may prevent installation. In this case, remove the computer from the domain before installing Microsoft Message Queuing, Microsoft SQL Server 2016 and WinCC. Log on to the computer concerned locally with administrator rights. Carry out the installation. Following successful installation, the WinCC computer can be registered in the domain again. If the domain-group policies and domain restrictions do not impair the installation, the computer must not be removed from the domain during installation.

Note however that domain group policies and restrictions in the domain may also hinder operation. If these restrictions cannot be overcome, operate the WinCC computer in a work group.

If necessary, contact the domain administrator.

---

**Procedure - Windows 10**

1. Go to "Control Panel > Programs and Features".
2. Click the "Turn Windows features on or off" button on the left menu bar. The "Windows Features" dialog opens.
3. Activate the "Microsoft Message Queue (MSMQ) server" component. The "Microsoft Message Queue (MSMQ) Server Core" entry is selected. The subcomponents remain disabled.
4. Confirm with "OK".

**Procedure - Windows Server 2012 R2 / Windows Server 2016**

1. Start the Server Manager.
2. Click on "Add roles and features". The "Add Roles and Features Wizard" window opens.
3. Click "Server selection" in the navigation area. Ensure that the current computer is selected.
4. Click "Features" in the navigation area.
5. Select the following options:
   - "Message queuing"
   - The "Message Queuing Services" option below
   - The "Message Queuing Server" option below
6. Click "Install".
1.1.7.3 How to Install WinCC

Introduction

This section describes how to install and run WinCC.

The components already installed are displayed during setup. The following symbols are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>Current version of program is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⬆️</td>
<td>Program is being updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚠️</td>
<td>Program setup conditions are not met. Click the symbol for more detailed information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>Program can be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>Program selected for installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>Program cannot be selected (due to dependence on other programs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>Program selected for installation (cannot be deselected).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scope of Installation

During custom installation of WinCC, you can choose between the following variants:

| Typical     | • WinCC Runtime  
|             | • WinCC CS  
|             | • Basic Process Control  
|             | • SQL Server |
| Complete    | "Typical", including:  
|             | • OPC servers  
|             | • SmartTools |
| Expert mode | Custom installation:  
|             | You can select or deselect individual components in "WinCC Expert". |
1) When installing the "WinCC Client", you need an "RT Client" or "RC Client" client license.
You can also install or remove components and languages at a later time. Read the sections
"How to perform a supplementary installation" and "How to perform a supplementary
installation of languages" for more on this.

The required drive space depends upon the installed components. An estimated value is
shown in the status bar.

WinCC remote communication
Remote access is disabled by default after the installation.
If you use a redundant system or a client-server system, for example, activate the remote
communication in the SIMATIC Shell settings.
You can find additional information under "Notes on Data and System Security (Page 25)".

Installation of WinCC Options
You can installed the desired options during the installation of WinCC itself.
The documentation for some of the options will be available only if the concerned option
package is installed.

Automatic Migration when a WinCC Project of a Previous Version is Opened
When you open a project that was created with a version older than WinCC V7.5, the
configuration data and Runtime data are automatically migrated. Convert the pictures and
libraries with the Project Migrator or manually via the WinCC Explorer.
You can find detailed information about migration in the WinCC Information System under
"First Steps > Migration (Page 171)".

Requirements
- Make sure that no other setup is running on the computer at the same time, for example,
a Windows update.
- You need local administrator rights to install WinCC.
  Information on user rights, which is necessary for the operation of WinCC, is located in
  section "Instructions for Security of Data and System".
- The computer name may only contain permissible characters.
- The Windows component "MS Message Queuing" services must have been installed.
- The security policies must be adapted under Windows.
- No manually created SQL server entity with the name "WinCC" may be installed.
• The storage medium with the licenses is still not to be connected with the installation computer.

• If you want to use the OPC-XML-DA-Server from WinCC, the Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS) must be installed before installing the OPC-XML-DA-Server.

WinCC is released for the following operating system languages: English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Chinese simplified (PRC), Chinese traditional (Taiwan), Japanese, Korean and multi-lingual operating system.

Note

Unfulfilled requirements

An error message is output if you run WinCC Setup without having the administrator rights, or if other setup conditions are not met.

You can find additional information on error messages under "WinCC Installation Requirements (Page 16)".

Procedure

1. Start the WinCC product DVD.
   - The DVD starts automatically if Autorun is enabled in the operating system.
   - If the Autorun function is not activated, start the program Setup.exe on the DVD.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
   Read the License Agreement and the Open Source License Agreement.

3. Select the languages you want to install.
   You may install other languages at a later time.

4. Select "Install" as the setup type.
   If an older WinCC version is found, you can also activate the "Update" setup type. However, this does not allow you to install any additional products.

5. Select the setup mode.

6. In Package installation , select the Program package "WinCC Installation".
   - If you also want to install WinCC options, select the corresponding program packages.
   - Select "WinCC Client Installation" if you only want to install the WinCC client.
   - Select the scope of your installation in User-defined installation.
   The components to be installed are highlighted in Setup.
   Click on "Help" for a description of the displayed symbols. Click on "Readme" to open the Information System.

7. Read the license agreement for the Microsoft SQL Server.

8. Before the installation, the security settings that are adapted for WinCC are displayed in the "System Settings" dialog. The firewall is configured automatically.
   Confirm the changes to the system settings.
9. Start the installation.
   You can track the status of the installation in the displayed dialog. Select "Cancel" to cancel
   the installation of the current component.

10. You can transfer the product License Keys after having installed the components.
    To do so, click on "Transfer License Key".
    Select "Next" if you have already transferred the license keys or want to install them at a
    later time.

    **Note**
    **Transferring the licenses**
    The license keys will not be transferred automatically. You will have to transfer missing
    license keys during or after installation with Automation License Manager.

11. Restart the computer to conclude the installation.

**Entries in the "Siemens Automation" program group**

After the installation of WinCC, you will find the new entries in the "Siemens Automation"
program group.

- **Starting WinCC Explorer:**
  - WinCC Explorer

- **Editors and tools for working with WinCC:**
  - Autostart
  - Channel Diagnosis
  - Cross Reference Assistant
  - Dynamic Wizard Editor
  - Project Duplicator
  - Project Migrator
  - Tag Export Import
  - WinCC Documentation Viewer
  - WinCC Tag Simulator

- **Documentation on WinCC:**
  - Documentation > Manuals

To open the online help of WinCC and the installed WinCC options, select the "WinCC
Information System" link in the language folder.

Print versions of the WinCC Information System:

- PDF files in the installation path under "WinCC > Documents"

- **Management of the licenses:**
  - Automation License Manager
  - License Analysis
Security Controller for display of the customized security settings:
  - Security Controller

Overview of the installed SIMATIC software and the components:
  - Inst. Software

See also

- Upgrading WinCC (Page 46)
- Notes on Data and System Security (Page 25)
- Defining Access Rights in the Operating System (Page 27)
- How to Install MS Message Queuing (Page 34)
- How to Adapt the Windows Security Policies (Page 33)
- How to Install Supplementary Components Later (Page 40)
- WinCC Installation Requirements (Page 16)

1.1.7.4 How to Install Supplementary Components Later

Introduction

Once you have installed WinCC, you can then install further components or options at a later date.

Installation of WinCC Options

The WinCC DVD contains the following WinCC Options:

- WinCC/Connectivity Pack / Connectivity Station
- WinCC/DataMonitor
- WinCC/WebNavigator
- WinCC/WebUX

These options require their own licenses.

If you purchase a WinCC option at a later date, you will receive the necessary licenses on a license data carrier. An installation DVD is not supplied.

Use the WinCC DVD for installation.
Procedure

1. Start the WinCC product DVD.
   If the Autorun function is not activated, start the program Setup.exe on the DVD.
2. Specify whether you wish to install individual components or options. The already installed components will be displayed.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Installation path of SmartTools

Run the SmartTools setup from the following path on your WinCC DVD:
- "Instdata\Smarttools\Setup\Setup.exe"

See also

WinCC Installation Requirements (Page 16)
How to Install WinCC (Page 36)

1.1.7.5 How to Install Supplementary Languages

Introduction

Once you have installed WinCC, you can later install additional languages.

Procedure

1. Open the "Programs and Features" entry in the Control Panel.
2. Select "SIMATIC WinCC Runtime V7.5" and click the "Change" button.
   The WinCC Setup program opens.
3. Select the desired languages.
4. When prompted, insert the WinCC product DVD in the DVD drive.
   Once the start page of the DVD is opened via Autorun function, close the window with "Exit".
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
6. If you have installed WinCC CS, select "SIMATIC WinCC Configuration V7.5" and click the "Change" button.
   Repeat steps 3 to 5 for WinCC CS.
   Repeat this procedure for any additionally installed components and options.
1.1.7.6 Configure automatic installation of WinCC

The "Central installation" function

Configuring automatic installation

To install WinCC on multiple PCs, use a central installation.

Central setup storage: Note the path length

When you store the setup at a central location and launch it from a network drive, use the shortest possible folder names.

The path length of the drive name, file folder and setup files may be no longer than 255 characters.

Record function

The Record function supports multiple installation on different computers with identical options.

During setup, the Record function records the settings and creates a "Ra_Auto.ini" installation file which supports you during installation.

While in the past you had to navigate through all setup dialogs for each installation, all you have to do now is start setup with the "Ra_Auto.ini" control file.

Conditions for using the record function

- Central installation is only possible for the respective setup version that is available at the time.
  A central installation of WinCC has no effect on the subsequent installation of updates or options.
- The "Expert mode" scope of installation cannot be used for automatic installation.
  In Expert mode, the installation dialog is opened for each product even when you have saved the installation settings with the Record function.

Overview of the procedure

The following steps are required for a central installation:

1. Call the Record function and create the "Ra_Auto.ini" control file.
2. Start central installation.

Calling the Record function of the central installation

You use the Record function to create the "Ra_Auto.ini" control file which includes all information for the central installation.

Dependency on operating system

Run the central installation for each operating system version separately.
The control file can only be executed on PCs on which the same operating system version is running. During installation of WinCC, Microsoft updates are installed, for example, which depend on the installed operating system.

Scope of installation for automatic installation

The "Expert mode" scope of installation cannot be used for automatic installation.
Select one of the other available installation methods, e.g. "Typical" or "WinCC Client".

Requirement

- You need administrator rights on your PC.

Procedure

1. To open the Windows entry field, select the entry "Run" in the "Windows System" program group.
2. Enter the following command line:
   - <Path for the installation data>\setup.exe /record
   Select the DVD drive or a central PC to which the installation data were copied as path for the installation files.
   Setup is started.
3. Select the desired language and click "OK".
   The "Record function" dialog is displayed.
4. Activate the Record function.
5. Select the path in which you want to create the "Ra_Auto.ini" control file and confirm with "Next".
6. Select the required components and settings for the installation.
   Once you have made the settings, the message "Recording completed" is displayed.

Result

The control file "Ra_Auto.ini" is created and saved in the selected path.

Start central installation

For central installation on the PC of your WinCC system, start an automatic installation.

The settings of the "Ra_Auto.ini" control file are applied in the process.
Requirement

- You have created the "Ra_Auto.ini" file using the Record function. The file "Ra_Auto.ini" must be created with the existing setup version.
- The same operating system version is installed on the PC.

Procedure

1. If required, copy the setup to a central server or PC.
2. Copy the file "Ra_Auto.ini" to the folder "C:\Windows" on the PC to be installed.
3. Start central installation by calling automatic installation:
   
   `\<Path for the installation data>\setup.exe /silent`

   You may receive a message when the central installation was completed successfully.

   **Note**
   
   If an error or inconsistency occurs during installation, you will receive messages that require your acknowledgement.

4. Repeat this process for each required computer.

Alternative procedure

If the file "Ra_Auto.ini" is not located in the "C:\windows" folder, start central installation with the following call:

- `<Path for the installation data>\setup.exe /silent=<storage path> \Ra_Auto.ini`

1.1.8 Uninstalling WinCC

Introduction

On your computer, you can remove WinCC completely or simply remove individual components. You cannot remove individual languages.

You can execute the removal via the WinCC product DVD or via the control panel of the operating system.

Procedure: Uninstalling via the WinCC Product DVD

1. Start the WinCC product DVD.
   
   The DVD starts automatically if Autorun is enabled in the operating system.
   
   If the Autorun function is not activated, start the program Setup.exe on the DVD.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
3. Select “Remove” as the setup type.
4. Select the components that you want to remove.

**Alternative procedure: Uninstalling via the Control Panel**

1. Open the "Uninstall or change a program" dialog in the Windows Control Panel.
2. Select the desired entry. The installed WinCC components always start with "SIMATIC WinCC".
3. Choose the "Uninstall" or "Change" option from the shortcut menu. Remove any WinCC options that may have been installed before you remove the WinCC version.

**Microsoft SQL Server 2016**

After uninstalling WinCC, you also need to remove the "WinCC" SQL server instance:

Choose the "Microsoft SQL Server 2016" entry for removal in the "Uninstall or change a program" dialog.

The use of the Microsoft SQL Server 2016 is only permitted when you have a valid license.

**Automation License Manager / MS Update**

When WinCC is removed, the following programs remain installed, as they may be needed by other SIMATIC products:

- Automation License Manager
- MS Update V1.0 SP1

If, after removing WinCC, you want to install an earlier version of WinCC, you need to remove both of these programs:

Select the respective entry for removal in the "Uninstall or change a program" dialog.

**Removal when the WebNavigator client is installed**

If you remove WinCC from a computer on which the WebNavigator client is installed, you must then reinstall the WebNavigator client.

**Changing the settings in the Windows Event Viewer**

When WinCC is installed, the WinCC Setup program changes the settings of the Event Viewer.

- Maximum Log Size (System Log/User Log): 1028 KB
- Log Continuation (System Log/User Log): "Overwrite events" (Default setting: Overwrite events that are older than 7 days)

After removing WinCC, these settings are not reset.
You can adapt these settings in the Windows Event Viewer yourself.

1.1.9 Upgrading WinCC

1.1.9.1 Upgrading WinCC

Introduction

You can upgrade to WinCC V7.5 as of version WinCC V6.2 SP3 through an upgrade installation.

Proceed as described in "Upgrading an installation" section.

Note

Restart PC before installing the update

Restart the PC before commencing installation of the update to WinCC V7.5.

Requirements for the upgrade

If you are upgrading WinCC versions prior to V7.0 SP3, observe the operating system requirements and hardware requirements.

Additional information on migration of WinCC versions V4 or higher is available under the following URL (entry ID=44029132):


Information on migrating projects

When you open a project of a previous version in WinCC V7.5, you are prompted to migrate it. However, you may also use WinCC Project Migrator to migrate several WinCC projects in a single step.

You still have to make some project settings after migration.

For more information about the migration of projects see section "Migration".

Note

WinCC user no longer needs to be a member of the "SQLServerMSSQLUser$<COMPUTER NAME>$WINCC" user group

When you migrate projects created prior to WinCC V7.2, you remove the WinCC users from this group.

In WinCC projects prior to V7.2, you will find the user group under the name "SQLServer2005MSSQLUser$<COMPUTER NAME>$WINCC".
Notes on licensing
You need to upgrade licenses of WinCC prior to V7.5 to the current version.
You can update the licensing retroactively. Detailed information is available in the WinCC Information System under the topic "Licensing".

See also
How to Perform an Upgrade Installation (Page 47)

1.1.9.2 How to Perform an Upgrade Installation

Introduction
If you currently have WinCC V6.2 SP3 or higher installed on your system, you can perform an upgrade installation.
Before beginning an upgrade installation, the transfer of existing projects must be prepared.

Requirement
The hardware configuration of previous versions is sufficient in most cases to install an upgrade to WinCC V7.5.
However, performance is reduced if the amount of data is increased too much. If it is expected that the data volume will increase, upgrade the hardware in good time.

Note
Restart PC before installing the update
Restart the PC before commencing installation of the update to WinCC V7.5.

Requirements for the upgrade
If you are upgrading WinCC versions prior to V7.0 SP3, observe the operating system requirements and hardware requirements.
Additional information on migration of WinCC versions V4 or higher is available under the following URL (entry ID=44029132):
• Internet: FAQ Migration V4 > V7 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/view/44029132)
Upgrade preparation

Note

**Backing up a WinCC project**

Make a backup copy of your project before upgrading WinCC.

**Restart PC before installing the update**

Restart the PC before commencing installation of the update to WinCC V7.5.

**Additional steps and adjusting settings**

Also read the notes in the WinCC Information System under "Migration".

Check the special characters

Before performing an upgrade installation of WinCC, check the existing projects with regard to special characters used in the archive names, archive tag names, trend names, trend window names, column names and table window names. You will find a table with the permitted special characters in the section "Working with WinCC > Working with Projects > References".

It is possible that you must use Tag Logging in WinCC V6.2 SP3 or V7.0 to remove certain special characters from the names.

**NOTICE**

**Transferring archives with impermissible special characters**

When transferring archives, if they contain impermissible special characters, the Runtime archive may be lost.

Modified standard functions (ANSI-C)

If modified standard functions (ANSI-C) are used, make backup copies of the functions prior to the upgrade installation.

During the WinCC installation process, these functions are overwritten by the standard functions supplied.

Procedure

1. Prepare existing WinCC projects for migration.
   Check the used names for impermissible special characters.

2. Install WinCC V7.5. Proceed as described in the section "How to install WinCC".
   You need the storage medium that contains the licenses for WinCC V7.5. Upgraded licenses of previous WinCC versions will be lost.

3. Migrate your existing WinCC projects.
   Note the corresponding "First Information > Migration" section in the WinCC Information System.
Introduction

For trouble-free operation and optimal performance of WinCC, observe the notes on operation under Windows and the notes on configuration.

You can find this information in the following sections of the WinCC Information System:

- "Release Notes > Notes on operation"
  This section includes information on compatibility and on use of virus scanners.

- "Release Notes > Notes on WinCC > Remote access and Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP)"
  The section contains information about remote communication.

- "Working with WinCC > Working with Projects > Making Settings for Runtime > Effect of External Applications on Runtime"
  This section contains information on applications that can affect system resources.

- "Working with WinCC > Working with Projects > Making Settings for Runtime > System Diagnostics with Performance Tags"
  The section contains information on system tags with which, for example, the time behavior during reading or writing of tags is analyzed.

- "Working with WinCC > Dynamize process pictures > Dynamization: Configuration recommendations"
  The section contains information on optimal dynamization of picture objects and controls.

- "Configurations > Multi-User Systems > Quantity Structures and Performance"
  The notes on configuration in this section apply to all project types.
1.2 WinCC Release Notes

1.2.1 Release Notes

Content

These Release Notes contain important information.
The information in these Release Notes has priority over that in the manuals and online help
with regard to legal validity.
Please read these Release Notes carefully since it contains information which may prove helpful.

1.2.2 Notes on operation

1.2.2.1 Notes on operation

General information

Avoiding loads from external applications
If several programs are run simultaneously on the same computer, the computer may be
exposed to high load levels.
To ensure trouble-free WinCC operations do not run any other applications that can lead to a
resource crunch on the PC. Therefore, close any unnecessary programs before starting
WinCC. Additional information is available in the section "Working with Projects > Making
Runtime Settings > Impact of External Applications on Runtime".

System diagnostics with performance tags
You can analyze the time behavior, e.g. during reading and writing of data, with the system
tags of the "Performance" tag group.

Compatibility

You can find information on compatibility on the Internet in FAQ No. 64847781:

Use of virus scanners

The following virus scanners have been released for use as of WinCC V7.5:

- Trend Micro "OfficeScan" Client-Server Suite V12.0
- Symantec Endpoint Protection V14 (Norton Antivirus)
- McAfee VirusScan Enterprise V8.8
- McAfee Endpoint Protection V10.5
- McAfee Application Control V8.1 (Whitelisting)
- Kaspersky Anti-Virus 2018
- Windows Defender (version contained in the operating system)

Updated information on the approved virus scanners is available in the compatibility tool under "Further products > Virus scanners".

Fundamental principle

The use of a virus scanner should not hamper the runtime process in a plant.

Rules for local virus scanners (virus scan clients)

- Integrated firewall of the virus scanners
  In WinCC V7.x, the local Windows firewall can be programmed with SIMATIC Security Control. You may not install or activate the integrated Firewall of the virus scanners.

- Manual scan
  You are not permitted to run a manual scan in runtime. Run this scan at regular intervals on all the system PCs, for e.g. during a maintenance interval.

- Automatic scan
  During automatic scan it is enough to just scan the incoming data traffic.

- Scheduled Scan
  You are not permitted to run a scheduled scan in runtime.

- Pattern update
  Pattern update of virus scan clients (system PCs being checked for viruses) is done by the higher-level virus scan servers (the system PC that centrally manages the virus scan clients).

- Dialogs
  To avoid interfering with process mode, no dialog messages should be displayed on the virus scan clients.

- Drives
  Only the local drives are scanned to prevent overlapping scans on network drives.

- You can deactivate e-mail scan except on the WinCC engineering station that receives e-mail.

Accept all other default settings.
What does this ensure?
The incoming data traffic is checked for viruses. The effect on process mode is kept to a minimum.

Note
When using a virus scanner, make sure that the computer has sufficient system resources.

Screen savers
Using a screen saver costs processor time and can lead to a system overload. Screensavers which no longer release parts of the working memory, continuously reduce the usable working memory.

The Windows "Logon screen saver" can be used.

See also
Software requirements for installing WinCC (Page 19)


1.2.2.2 Information on the Windows operating system

Microsoft security updates and patches
Make sure that all current patches and security updates from Microsoft are installed on your computer.

For further information, refer to the FAQs in the SIMATIC Customer Online Support:

General information

WinCC interface and 64-bit operating system

The public interface of WinCC offer no native 64-bit support. This primarily affects ODK, VBS and the WinCC OLEDB provider. To use the interface of WinCC under a 64-bit operating system, you must adhere to the following:

- You cannot launch VB scripts simply with a double-click. You must explicitly use the 32-bit version under "syswow64\wscript.exe".
- .NET applications that use the WinCC API must be explicitly compiled as 32-bit applications. With "x86" and not with "AnyCPU".
- C++ applications cannot be compiled as 64-bit applications.

Preventing access to Windows in runtime

Displaying the online help in runtime

If you wish to ensure that operators have no access to the operating system level of a plant, deactivate online help in all controls. This prevents the Windows selection dialog from opening.

To do so, deactivate the "Help available in Runtime" option in the "Project properties" dialog in the "Options" tab.

Displaying the Windows taskbar in runtime

You can use the computer properties to prevent the Windows taskbar from being displayed in runtime:

- Open the "Parameters" tab in the "Computer properties" dialog and disable the option "Disable shortcut keys for operating system access" in the "Disable Keys" area.
- In addition, deactivate the "Keep the taskbar on top of other windows" setting in Windows.

If you disable the <CTRL+ESC> shortcut key, the following shortcut keys are also disabled in runtime:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyboard shortcut</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;Windows key+U&gt;</td>
<td>System utility program manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press &lt;SHIFT&gt; five times</td>
<td>Locking function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press &lt;SHIFT right&gt; for eight seconds</td>
<td>Impact delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;ALT left+SHIFT left+NUM&gt;</td>
<td>Keyboard mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;ALT left+SHIFT left+PRINT&gt;</td>
<td>High contrast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The functions can be configured using the Windows Control Panel.

If the functions are activated in the Windows Control Panel before activating WinCC Runtime, they are no longer locked in runtime.

By activating the option "Disable shortcut keys for operating system access", you are also disabling the shortcut keys for easier operation.
Do not use the "On-screen Keyboard" enabled by Windows
Use the on-screen keyboard offered by WinCC instead of the "On-Screen Keyboard" enabled by Windows to prevent the display of the Windows taskbar in runtime.

Do not specify print to file as standard printing
Do not set the print to file as standard printing procedure in the Windows operating system. This prevents the Windows dialog for saving the file from opening when printing from WinCC.

WinCC WebBrowser Control: Disabling the shortcut menu
You can restrict the shortcut menu of the WinCC WebBrowser Control in runtime:

- To reduce the shortcut menu to "Forward" and "Backward" navigation, activate the object property "UseSimpleContextMenu" in the Graphics Designer.
- To suppress the shortcut menu completely, deactivate the Windows group guideline:
  To open the Microsoft "Group Policy Object Editor", enter "Gpedit.msc" in the search field. Deactivate the shortcut menu in the Group Policy "User configuration\Administrative templates\Windows components\Internet Explorer\Browser menus".

Warnings with the DCOM configuration
When the "Dcomcnfg.exe" program starts, there may be warnings about unregistered AppIDs of WinCC components.
This reaction has no effect on the functional capability of the software. The warnings can be ignored.

Changing the screen settings

Changing the color palette
If you change the color palette via the Windows Control Panel, you should expect color changes and poorer legibility of the text.
When creating the project, therefore, be sure use the same color palette that will be used in runtime.

Changing the resolution
In order to use a different resolution in the destination system, use the "Adapt Picture" or "Adapt Size" functions for pictures and windows.
These settings can lead to blurred displays in runtime and increased system loads.

Operating system with multilanguage installation: wrong language in message boxes
In message boxes in which the user must respond with Yes/No, OK/Cancel, etc., the buttons are always labeled in English in both CS and RT.
This characteristic is independent of both the operating system language set and the WinCC language.
Novell Netware clients

WinCC should not be installed on a system together with the Novell client software. The installation of WinCC can have the effect that it is no longer possible to log on to the Novell system or to lock the keyboard during runtime.

We recommend you not use the Netware client software or use the Microsoft client for Netware.

Notes on Internet Explorer

Web client: Display of ActiveX controls in Internet Explorer

ActiveX controls are disabled in Internet Explorer by default. For this reason, the WinCC controls are not displayed correctly in Internet Explorer on a Web client.

To display the WinCC controls correctly, add the Web server as a trusted website and enable the ActiveX controls only for the "Trusted sites" zone.

To continue protecting Internet Explorer from foreign ActiveX controls, check that the restricted security settings still apply to the other zones after making the changes.

For more information, refer to the following documentation:

- WinCC/WebNavigator: "WinCC/WebNavigator Installation Notes > Installation of WebNavigator Client > Settings in Internet Explorer"
- WinCC/DataMonitor: "WinCC/DataMonitor Documentation > Configuring the DataMonitor System > Working with the DataMonitor Client > Configuring Security Settings in Internet Explorer"

Internet Explorer: Setting for WinCC without Internet connection

Disable the option "Check for publisher's certificate revocation" on the "Advanced" tab in the Internet Options if you operate WinCC on computers that do not have an Internet connection.

See also


1.2.2.3 Information on the database system

Information on DB.dll

DB.dll is an ODK component for accessing databases via C API functions. The functionality is no longer supported for use with WinCC. Do not develop new applications with the database access layer DB.dll from WinCC.
Instead, use the following functions offered by Microsoft:

- Use ADO.NET for .NET-based applications. The database interface of the .NET Framework is object-oriented and designed for scalable applications. The interface is also well suited for data communication through firewalls.

- You can use OLE DB for C++ based applications. Microsoft provides templates with Visual Studio for this. They make it easier to use the OLE DB database technology with classes, which implements many commonly used OLE DB interfaces.

- You can also use ODBC C++ based applications. Microsoft provides classes for this, which facilitate programming.

You can find more detailed information and examples on the Microsoft website.

Notes on Microsoft SQL server

Error accessing the SQL master database after switching off the server while the system is running

If a server fails unexpectedly in runtime (power failure, disconnection of power plug), the WinCC installation may be corrupted as a result and the SQL server will no longer be able to access the SQL master database following a restart. Access is only possible after reinstalling the WinCC instance.

In order to reinstall the WinCC instance, both WinCC and the SQL server must be removed and installed again.

Improved access protection for the WinCC databases

For the purposes of improved access protection, the user names "WinCCAdmin" and "WinCCConnect" have been removed from the WinCC database. Access to the WinCC database is no longer possible using these user names. Applications which use their own SQL user names with password are not affected.

The user "SA" (system administrator) of the SQL server is deactivated during installation.

Manual detachment of WinCC project databases

A system property in Microsoft SQL server can bring about changes to the NTFS authorizations when you detach the WinCC project database.

If a WinCC database remains attached after you have closed a WinCC project or if you have manually attached the WinCC database, you always need to use the CCCCCleaner to detach the database. The "CCCleaner" program is located in the "bin" folder of the WinCC installation directory and must be started as administrator.

1.2.2.4 Information on network technology and UPS

Information on networks

WinCC only supports the TCP/IP network protocol on the terminal bus.
Operation on network servers

It is not permitted to operate WinCC on network servers (e.g. domain controllers, file and name utility servers, routers, software firewalls, media servers, exchange servers, etc.).

Operation on systems with Windows cluster technology

WinCC cannot be used on systems implementing Windows cluster technology.

Use of redundant servers

When redundant pairs of servers are implemented, the master and standby server must be operated in the same IP/subnet band.

Network adapters with energy-saving mode

When using network adapters provided with energy-saving mode, the energy-saving mode must not be activated.

Operation with multiple network adapters

If WinCC is used on a PC with more than one network adapter, observe the following:

Select the IP addresses which WinCC should use for communication with other WinCC stations. In Windows Explorer, select the "Simatic Shell" directory. Click into the navigation window of the dialog "Simatic Shell" and select "Settings..." in the shortcut menu. In the "Settings" dialog that follows, select the IP address to be used.

If problems occur with the configuration and project management despite this setting, it could be due to the assignment of the IP address by the DHCP server to the WinCC station being too slow. In this case, the network administrator must define the IP address for each network adapter on the WinCC station causing the problem.

To do this, press the Windows "Start" button and select "Settings" > "Control Panel". Open the "Network Connections" folder and then the "LAN Connection" dialog. Click "Properties" in the "General" tab. Open the "LAN Connection Properties" dialog and select the "Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)" element from the list in the "General" tab by double-clicking it. Use the "Use the following IP address" option button in the properties of Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) to define the IP addresses.

Observe the information in the following chapter: "Special features for communication with a server with multiple network adapters"

Network environment and network drives

Ensure that there are no unnecessary network drive connections.

In order to prevent delays following a restart of a distributed system, start the multi-user projects first. The reason for this is the reaction of the master browser service (responsible for displaying the network environment in the operating system) and administration of the domains and working groups.
Operation with TCP/IP protocol

If the TCP/IP protocol is installed, the IP address must be valid and must not change in runtime operation.

Observe the following here:

1. The IP address becomes invalid when the network adapter is removed or deactivated after installation of the TCP/IP protocol.

2. The IP address may not be initialized yet. This occurs, for example, when the TCP/IP protocol is installed with the IP address derived from a DHCP server. When the computer is connected to the network, the computer undergoes a basic initialization during which an IP address is transferred. This IP address then remains valid even after the computer is disconnected from the network. After the period of the lease has expired, however, it can become invalid or changed in another way.

If the computer is not connected to the network, the user must log on via a user configured locally on this computer. This user should have local power user rights for runtime operation and for the configuration.

Leading zeros in IP addresses

When multi-user mode is used with name derivation via "hosts" and "lmhosts", no preceding zeros may be entered in the "hosts" file. IP addresses with leading zeros are interpreted as OCTAL instead of DECIMAL.

Example:
- Computer_1 199.99.99.020 is interpreted as 199.99.99.16 (decimal)
- Computer_2 199.99.99.026 is interpreted as 199.99.99.22 (decimal)

The specification can also be made hexadecimal:
- 199.99.99.0x10 for Computer_1

Using WinCC in multiple domains

The correct functioning of WinCC can only be guaranteed when all the computers in a multi-user system are located in a common domain or working group. When WinCC is used in different domains or working groups, complications may arise if the access rights and/or name utility are configured incorrectly.

When the user administration is realized in a working group, all the WinCC users must be set up on all the computers in the multi-user system and have the necessary access authorization.

Use of WinCC within a domain

If problems occur accessing the Windows domains, it cannot be guaranteed that WinCC functions correctly. Therefore, in addition to a "server-stored user profile", a local user profile and local user with necessary rights for WinCC must be set up. If access problems occur with a domain logon, exit WinCC and log on again using the local user profile.
Information for using routers and firewalls

Using routers

WinCC V7 can also be used to connect WinCC clients to WinCC servers via routers. WinCC clients without their own project cannot be used for configuration with the routers, only for WinCC Runtime. There are no restrictions for WinCC clients with their own project.

The following is required when using routers:

- WinCC must use the correct IP address of the WinCC stations.
- The WinCC stations must be capable of resolving the physical computer name (NETBIOS name) of the other computers in the WinCC project.
- The WinCC stations must be capable of reaching each other via TCP/IP and ICMP without any problems. When testing the connection using Ping, it must be possible to access the computers immediately.
- Activate multicast forwarding to the network routers between the servers and the clients.

Speed of the network connections

For slow network connections, we recommend:

- Restricting the quantity of data to be transferred, for example, by avoiding complicated graphics.
- Using the local pdl cache of the WinCC client.
- Using the ISDN router for a WinCC client in multi-link mode (channel bundling). Bandwidths below 128 Kbps have proved insufficient.
- Integrate only one WinCC client for each additional ISDN channel.
- The operation of WinCC via ISDN routers depends on the stability and availability of the ISDN network.
- Reserve the maximum bandwidth of the connection for WinCC.

Note

Connection via ISDN and operation using slow connections has not been approved for clients without a local project.

Connecting to an office network with a central firewall

Some network configurations can increase the load on the firewall.

You can avoid the described reaction by assigning unique IP addresses to all WinCC stations.

Basic system characteristics

- With a standard installation of Windows, the computer is assigned a random IP address from the DHCP server.
Requirements
The following conditions can lead to undesirable reactions when operating WinCC:

- The IP address band used in the terminal network is higher than the APIPA address band (169.254.x.x).
- IP addresses are routed via the default gateway.
- IP addresses from the APIPA band are routed to the firewall.

Cause of the increased load at the firewall
Following a system startup, each WinCC station sends its IP address once to all the other WinCC stations in the network. The WinCC stations define the WinCC station with the lowest IP address as the server that coordinates availability of the project.

If a WinCC station does not receive an address from the DHCP server and is therefore missing in the APIPA process, this station becomes the coordinating server. As a result, all the other WinCC stations attempt to access this server cyclically to publish the project.

The coordinating server, however, cannot be addressed because the IP address from the APIPA band is automatically transferred to the firewall. This also causes an increased network load at the central firewall.

Solution
This reaction can be avoided by assigning a unique IP address to each WinCC station.
Information on uninterruptible power system

Prevent damaged files during power outages

If a power failure occurs while using Windows systems when the WinCC system is active, files can be corrupted or lost. Operation using the NTFS file system offers more security. Secure continuous operation can only be guaranteed when an uninterruptible power system (UPS) is used.

Uninterruptible power system for client-server systems

If the server in a client-server system should be buffered by an UPS system, it must be capable of bridging a power failure for up to 30 minutes. This value depends on the configuration and number of computers, especially in a multi-user system. A great deal of time is required for the configuration.

1.2.3 Notes on WinCC

1.2.3.1 General information on WinCC and configurations

General information

WinCC Demo project

The WinCC demo project for WinCC V7.5 can be downloaded as a self-extracting ZIP file at:


WinCC passwords: Migration of WinCC projects

As of version V7.2, WinCC offers improved encryption of passwords. Note for migrated project that were created with WinCC prior to V7.2:

- You must re-enter the user name and the password for "WinCC Service Mode" operating mode.
- To increase security of WinCC through improved encryption, you have the re-enter the passwords in the User Administrator.

Increasing password security

Make sure that the WinCC passwords meet the usual security guidelines, for example, mandatory use of capital letters and special characters, minimum number of characters.
Migrate WinCC projects remotely only with UNC paths

Use only UNC paths to migrate WinCC projects remotely. Release the project path or the folder above it. Use this UNC path as project directory for the WinCC Project Migrator.

No update of the operating system with WinCC started

An update of the operating system is not permitted if WinCC is started. Start the computer again after updating the operating system.

WinCC documentation: WinCC Information System

The information in the online help is more up-to-date than the information in the printable PDF files.

Openness and system stability

WinCC enables high performance programming of actions on individual graphic objects up to complete functions and global action scripts that are independent of the individual components.

C scripting

WinCC and Windows API functions can be called in the action scripts. In addition, the integrated script programming contains a C interpreter with a large number of standard functions complying to ANSI-C.

Please note that, due to the openness of the system, it is possible to write actions that block the system and lead to system crashes in runtime due to continuous loops, incorrectly initialized pointers, etc. Pay attention to the availability of allocated memory.

VB scripting

VBScript (VBS) enables access to tags and objects of the graphical runtime system during runtime. In addition to VBS standard functions and constants, the Windows Scripting Host and the MS Automation interface can also be used to make the Windows environment dynamic.

There is no guarantee nor WinCC support for the VBS functionality with regard to its adaptation to the Windows environment.

You can find additional information in the following sections of the WinCC Information System:

- "ANSI-C for Creating Functions and Actions"
- "VBS for Creating Procedures and Actions"
- "Process Picture Dynamics"

Time synchronization

Time synchronization between the servers and automation systems is essential for the correct functioning of:

- Redundancy synchronization
- Chronological messaging
• Search and sorting criteria using the time code
• Operating multi-user projects in one domain

You can find additional information in the following sections of the WinCC Information System:
• "Redundant systems"
• "Chronological reporting"
• "Multi-user systems"
• "Time synchronization"

**Complete download of redundant systems**

Do not perform a complete download to the redundant systems in SIMATIC Manager using the "Target system / Compile and Download Objects..." function, as this can create inconsistent data on the target system.

Instead, select the "Download" option in the SIMATIC manager in the shortcut menu of the operating system.

**Installation of the examples projects**

The supplied example projects are located on the WinCC DVD in the directory "Samples \WinCC".

**Installing OPC XML DA Server on a WinCC system**

Use the WinCC Product DVD if you want to add an OPC XML DA Server installation to a WinCC system. Do not install the application by means of Windows Control Panel.

**Information on multi-user systems**

**Clients without their own project in multi-user systems**

In multi-user systems, there may be a delay in the selection of the first picture following a redundancy switchover for clients without their own project.

If you are changing the runtime language of a client without its own project in a multi-user system, you will have to close WinCC on the client and exit the WinCC project on the server. Only then will the language be altered.

**Remote access from a client without its own project**

The server data editor is not available in the WinCC Explorer on a client without its own project.

The "Archive Configuration" entry is not available in Tag Logging and Alarm Logging.
Notes on integration into SIMATIC Manager

Symbolic data block name: Maximum of 16 characters long
If you want to transfer tags from a data block to WinCC, the symbolic name must not exceed 16 characters.

Creating a DCF file
If the DCF file cannot be read after migration, a message regarding the defective file is written to the migration log file.
In order to create another DCF file, proceed as follows. The sequence must be adhered to in all cases:
1. Open the project in the configuration mode.
2. Remember your own symbolic computer name (server prefix) needed for later export.
3. Remember the storage location of the imported server data.
4. Remember the preferred server and the default server.
5. Delete your own and imported server data.
6. Close the project.
7. Delete the DCF file in project directory (typically ProjectName.dcf).
8. Reopen the project in the configuration mode.
9. Create your own server data, making sure to maintain the original symbolic computer name (server prefix) (see step 2).
10. Import all imported packages again (see step 3).
11. Reconfigure the preferred server and default server (see step 4).
12. Close the project.

CPU load
If data, transferred from a server to a client, cannot be processed at the same speed, the client rejects the data frames from a specified threshold value.
The following process control messages are issued in conjunction with this:
- 1000200: "WCCRT:Status"
You will find the following additional information in the comment of this message or in the log file "WinCC_Sys_<x>.log":
- 1000200,4,,<Computer name>, DataManager Runtime, RPC call took longer than 5000 msec
  (Client requires a very long time to process the data)
- 1000200,4,,<Computer name>, DataManager Runtime, Update data for Client '<client name>' lost,
  (message frames for the client are discarded on the server)
Data may be lost on the client.

See also

Internet: WinCC demo projects (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/products?search=demo&dt=ExampleOfUse&o=DefaultRankingDesc&pnid=14867&lc=en-WW)


1.2.3.2 Information on WinCC CS

General information

Using several WinCC editors

Do not use multiple WinCC editors at the same time because the editors can access the same
WinCC components. For example, use of the “Text Distributor” and “Cross Reference” editors
or automatic update of the Cross Reference when the Graphics Designer is being accessed
simultaneously via interfaces.

If you would like to work in several WinCC editors in parallel, activate the function "Multi-User-
Engineering" in the WinCC project.

Information on the Graphics Designer

Custom ActiveX controls (SIMATIC WinCC/ODK)

You must verify compatibility of custom ActiveX controls (SIMATIC WinCC/ODK) with the

This applies to both a direct installation of ActiveX control on the computer with WinCC, Web
server or Web client and the installation using a plug-in, such as on a Web client.

- With a direct installation, the ActiveX control should therefore be installed prior to WinCC
  Basic System, Web Server or Web Client.
  If the custom ActiveX controls do not function without error after this step, there is no
  compatibility.

- If the custom ActiveX Control was packaged in a plug-in and installed via download, an
  upgrade of WinCC Basic System, Web Server or Web Client will also require generation
  of a new plug-in using this ActiveX Control.
  When creating the plug-in, care should be taken to use compatible binaries (DLL, OCX,
  etc.).

Do not change the folder "GraCS/SVGLibrary"

Do not save any process pictures or faceplate types in the project folder under "GraCS/
SVGLibrary".
The folder "SVGLibrary" is only used for SVG libraries.

**Editor "Text and graphics lists" Limited release of text lists**

Contrary to the information in the WinCC documentation, the centrally configured text list is only enabled for the object "Text list".

The function is not enabled for the following objects:
- Combo box
- List box
- Check box
- Option group
- Faceplate types

**The "Date/Time" data format is not available for I/O fields copied from WinCC < V7.3**

When you copy an I/O field created in WinCC < V7.3, the "Date/Time" data format is not available for the pasted I/O field.

**Pictures with transparent areas: Using file formats with alpha channel**

If you want to use a graphic for Direct2D display which contains transparent areas, use only graphic formats with an alpha channel, e.g. BMP or PNG.

**Information on user administration**

**Electronic signature: WebUX not enabled**

The electronic signature as protection against critical operations cannot be used with WinCC/WebUX.

**Information on the logging system**

**Print barcode: "Code 39 Logitogo" font**

The "Code 39 Logitogo" font is language-dependent.

If you are using this font in a layout, not all languages may be printed correctly.

**Solution**

To print the barcode, use the "Version for MS Dynamics German + English" font.

This font is language-independent. The barcodes are printed even if the computers have different language settings.
Information on VBA

VBA updates

The user is solely responsible for the installation of updates for VBA.

The corresponding updates for VBA are made available by Microsoft on the download pages. Siemens does not supply any updates from Microsoft.

Install the updates for VBA after installing WinCC.

Notes on the channels

Name of a channel with national characters

When you enter a name with national characters in the "SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite" channel and especially in the "Named Connections" channel unit, you must have set the corresponding code page in the language options of the operating system.

See also


1.2.3.3 Information on WinCC runtime

Information on multi-user systems

Copying large amounts of data via the terminal bus

Copying larger amounts of data on a computer connected to a terminal bus can effect communication in a multi-user system. One of the possible causes is the use of hubs with a low data throughput.

Information on Tag Logging / Alarm Logging

Editing archive data already saved

Archived measured values/messages of previously saved archives cannot and should not be changed due to reasons of data security and consistency.
Information on OPC

SIMATIC WinCC OPC Server: Automatic assignment of DCOM rights

The DCOM rights required for operation of the OPC server are assigned automatically. The settings are performed during the installation. Depending on the WinCC operating mode, further configurations are performed.

You must not edit these settings manually.

No deinstallation of SIMATIC WinCC OPC Server when the OPC channel is used

When you use the OPC channel, you must not remove the SIMATIC WinCC OPC DA Server.

OPC tags: Time stamp for Alarm Logging and Tag Logging

If messages are triggered by OPC tags, the message time stamp is used by the OPC server, comparably to chronological reporting.
For Tag Logging the time stamp is generated by the Tag Logging server.

OPC Data Access

During operation of the OPC DA server on the WinCC client:
While the connection of the OPC client is being established, the WinCC server with which the OPC client exchanges data must be in Runtime.
If the WinCC server is deactivated, not all properties of the items will be provided.
Since the display of data types in OPC Item Manager requires a lot of time, the display should be turned off if it is not needed.

OPC XML Data Access

Display of newly created tags
When you create new tag folders with new tags in Runtime in the WinCC project, the tag folders and the tags will not become visible on the OPC client until you have restarted WinCC Runtime on the OPC client system.
Make sure that "OPCTags" are no longer open on the OPC client.

Add Tags
If you want to add tags with the OPC Item Manager, then WinCC Runtime will have to be enabled on the OPC server.

Authentication method
XML DA Web service is installed using WinCC Setup with the "Integrated Windows Authentication" authentication method. The WinCC OPC XML client supports this method. For this, the user account under which the OPC Client runs must be known to the XML server computer.
Upgrade installation: Setting up a WinCC OPC XML server

After an upgrade installation, in Computer Management, for the "Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager", under "Application Pools" for "WinCC-OPC-XML" you have to change the Microsoft .Net Framework version from V2.0 to V4.0.

OPC Historical Data Access

Return value "OPC_E_MAXEXCEEDED" for archive access

If the OPC client demands data from more than 2000 values during synchronous or asynchronous reading, the call is rejected with a return message OPC_E_MAXEXCEEDED. This limit serves to limit the computer load and duration of the call.

This restriction does not apply if the entire time range is read.

OPC Alarm&Event

Avoid bounding values

Avoid using bounding values when reading historical alarms via the WinCC-OPC-A&E-server. Otherwise, processing read access requests can take a long time, depending on the size of the archive.

Filtering messages when using format instructions in the user text block

The OPC source of a message is shown in an user text block. This is user text block 2 with the default setting.

If you use format instructions in this user text block, you need to use wild cards for the filter setting.

This ensures correct filtering when the OPC sources are generated dynamically in Runtime.

1.2.3.4 Information on Smart tools

Notes on WinCC ConfigurationTool and WinCC Archive ConfigurationTool

WinCC ConfigurationTool / WinCC Archive ConfigurationTool: Replacement

As of WinCC V7.3 you import and export the WinCC data via the WinCC Configuration Studio.

To import already existing files from the WinCC Configuration Tool/WinCC Archive ConfigurationTool into the WinCC Configuration Studio, use the menu command "Import" in the WinCC Configuration Studio.

In addition to the file name, select the "ConfigTool file (*.xlsx)" or "Archive Config Tool file (*.xlsx)" entry in the file selection dialog.

If you have configured the colors of message types in the WinCC Configuration Tool, the colors are not imported into the WinCC Configuration Studio from the Configuration Tool. You either need to create the message colors in the WinCC project before migrating the WinCC project.
to WinCC V7.3 and higher or, alternatively, manually configure the message colors later after the import in the WinCC Configuration Studio.

WinCC Configuration Studio replaces the functionality of "Tag Export/Import"

To export tags from a WinCC project or import them into a WinCC project, use the WinCC Configuration Studio.

Information on the Dynamic Wizard Editor

Opening the Dynamic Wizard Editor

The Dynamic Wizard Editor and the Graphics Designer should not be opened at the same time.

Information on the Tag Simulator

General information

The update time for tag values is one second. Any change will only become active when you are activating the functions.

A maximum of 300 tags can be configured.

1.2.3.5 Information on process communication

Information on the WinCC "SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite" channel

S7DOS configuration: Activate IPv4 protocol

If you are using S7DOS, you require the IPv4 protocol as of version "S7DOS V9".

Therefore, leave the IPv4 protocol activated in the Ethernet properties for the network adapter or the SIMATIC Ethernet CPs.

In this way, you ensure that the module detection of S7DOS works for the TCP, RFC1006 and ISO protocols.

Time change on an S7 automation system when using AR_SEND

Archive data transferred from the S7-AS to WinCC with AR_SEND is ignored if the time is reset on the AS, e.g. following time synchronization. The archive already contains the reset time period.
Information on the WinCC "WinCC-OPC-UA" channel

OPC UA: Displaying imported OPC UA tags

Tags created with a WinCC version older than V7.4 are shown as imported in the "Symbols" view of the Configuration Studio.

However, in this case the tags of the type "Raw data" are not shown as imported. The column "Access" is not available, although these tags have been correctly created in the Tag Management.

Reimport these tags and delete the incorrectly displayed tags in the Configuration Studio.

Filters for the OPC UA alarms: Extended operators for "Severity"

Contrary to the status described in the documentation, the operators for the filter criterion "Severity" have been extended.

For the criterion "Severity", you can use the following operators:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>Is equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!=</td>
<td>Is not equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>Is greater than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>Is less than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>Is greater than or equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>Is less than or equal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>Range from, to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 100, 200</td>
<td>Corresponds to Severity from 100 to 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Including the specified value respectively)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Information on the WinCC "Mitsubishi Ethernet" channel

Bit addressing with incorrect data type

Ensure that the bit addressing has the correct data type.

Incorrect addressing can result in the incorrect data type being written and as a result the adjacent bits being influenced.

The addressing of, for example a BOOL address with the data type WORD can result in the adjacent bits of the addressed bit being overwritten.
Information on the WinCC "SIMATIC S5 PROFIBUS DP" channel

PROFIBUS DP and SIMATIC Net V14
In order to use the "PROFIBUS DP" channel with SIMATIC Net V14, you must disable the "OPC UA" property for the "DP" protocol in the communication settings of SIMATIC Net V14.

Information on the WinCC "SIMATIC 505 TCPIP" channel

LMode and LStatus data types
The channel has been extended by the data types LMode and LStatus.
- LMode (Loop Mode): 16-bit value (bit array) without sign; access: write and read
- LStatus (loop status): 16-bit value (bit array) without sign; access: Read ONLY
The offset to be specified during the addressing identifies the loop whose mode or status should be requested.

1.2.3.6 Remote access and Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP)

Remote access to WinCC stations
You can find current instructions for remote access in the following FAQ:
Also observe the information on remote configuration in the WinCC Information System under "Configurations > Multi-User Systems > Remote Configuration".

Approved scenarios
The following scenarios have been tested:
- WinCC as single-user system
- WinCC as distributed system
- WinCC in redundant mode
- WinCC/WebUX server
You can also use communication via OPC in the approved scenarios.

Use of RealVNC
Information on the use of “RealVNC” is available on the Internet on the Customer Support pages:
No keyboard lock with RealVNC
Note that the keyboard lock is not supported with "RealVNC". The keyboard lock is only in effect with a Remote Desktop Protocol connection.

Remote maintenance of WinCC systems via RDP
Use of the Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) is only permitted when the WinCC server or the single-user system is running in WinCC ServiceMode.

Restrictions when using RDP
Observe the following restrictions:

- Start the WinCC project via the local user on the PC.
  If you do not start via the local user, not all the services are started during operation via the remote console.
  Further information is available under "Configurations > WinCC ServiceMode"

- The use in integrated operation in SIMATIC Manager has not been approved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data loss after interruption of the remote desktop connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the remote desktop connection is interrupted, for example, because the network cable was removed from the computer of the Remote Desktop Client, the archives and the OPC server, among others things, will no longer receive values from the data manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This status will persist until the connection has been restored, or the timeout of approximately 35 seconds has expired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Starting the Remote Desktop
You can access WinCC systems with a Remote Desktop client via a console session.
Access via the Remote Desktop Protocol may only be gained by means of console takeover with the same user, or initial login.

User groups and access rights
All "Remote Desktop" users must be members of the "SIMATIC HMI" user group on the target PC.
Procedure
1. To start a console session, open the "Run" dialog, for example, with <Windows button+R>.
2. Enter the following command:
   ```
   - mstsc /v:<Server> /admin
   ```
   Enter the computer name or the IP address as server.

For information on additional parameters, enter the following command:
   ```
   - mstsc /?
   ```

Migration: Migrate WinCC projects remotely only with UNC paths
Use only UNC paths to migrate WinCC projects remotely.
Release the project path or the folder above it.
Use this UNC path as project directory for the WinCC Project Migrator.

See also
https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/de/view/78463889

1.2.4 Notes on WinCC Redundancy

Notes on redundant systems

Redundancy behavior in case of double failure
Double failures are not covered by redundancy.
A double failure occurs, for example, when the terminal bus was pulled on server 1 while server 2 was deactivated.
Delay in swapping out archives
The swapping of archives will be delayed if a redundant partner is not available or deactivated. Swapping of archives will not start or continue until the partner is available once again and after archive synchronization.
An extended failure of the redundant partner may result in data loss, because the memory capacity of the circular buffer for Tag Logging and Alarm Logging is limited.

No reloading of messages after network failure
The reloading of messages after network failure is not permitted for redundant systems.

Configuring used standard gateway
For redundancy, it is recommended to configure a standard gateway for the correct detection of failure scenarios. The standard gateway must be properly configured on both redundancy servers for this. This can be done manually or via DHCP.
For a configured standard gateway, ensure that this gateway cannot only be reached but is also accessible using a "ping".

Use of DHCP: Starting computer only with active network connection
If you are using DHCP on the terminal bus network card, note the following in a redundant system:
The computer must obtain a valid IP address from the DHCP server during startup.
Otherwise, the redundancy status is always indicated as "fault". This status can only be reset by restarting the computer.

Message sequence report in a redundant system
If you output a message sequence report on a client, you may encounter problems during logging when switching to the redundant partner.

1.2.5 Notes on Process Control Options

Creating a New Project
If you create a new project manually, you must first run the OS Project Editor.
While creating an OS using PCS7 Engineering Station, the project is automatically called in the background and initialized using the default settings.

Removing unneeded "@*.PDL" pictures before migration
If the OS Project Editor has processed a WinCC project, the "@*.PDL" pictures of Basic Process Control will have been installed in the Graphics Designer.
If you do not need these pictures following the migration, you not only have to remove the "@.PDL" pictures prior to migration, but also the "PAS" files and "SSM.cfg".

After the migration, the files from Basic Process Control are no longer added.

Multiple languages

Online documentation in the WinCC Information System is available only in English, French, German and Chinese (Simplified, PR China).

If you work with a French, English or German version of Windows computer software and install a different language, it is possible that terms in WinCC appear in this language even if WinCC is operated with the same language as Windows.

Different buttons have English labels especially in the multi-lingual versions of Windows independent of the language setting and independent of the WinCC language. This affects dialog boxes in particular which the user must respond with Yes/No, OK/Cancel etc.

Tags with @ prefix

The project engineer may not create any tags with @ prefix. Only the WinCC PCS7 software can do this.

You are not allowed to manipulate these system tags.

The system tags are required so that the product works properly.

While configuring AS and OS monitoring using Lifebeat Monitoring, device names should not be identical to area names in Picture Tree or internal tags with the "@" name prefix.

Smart card: Disabling the Plug&Play service

If the Plug&Play service is enabled, an operating system message may occur in WinCC Runtime when scanning for drivers. This allows the access to the operating system.

Since WinCC does not require a separate smart card driver, the "Plug&Play" service for smart cards is disabled.

Area names in Alarm Logging and in the Picture Tree

Area names in Alarm Logging and in Picture Tree must not contain any spaces at the beginning or end.

Area names in distributed systems

With distributed systems, the area names in the projects of the various WinCC servers must be unique in order to ensure correct filtering and display of the messages according to the area.

Process picture in the plant view: Level 16 is hidden

Level 16 is always hidden when you create a new process picture in SIMATIC Manager in the plant view or with the WinCC Explorer.
Do not change this setting if you are using PCS 7 ASSET. The hidden level contains an 
"@RTBehaviourParams" object that is used for diagnostic purposes.

**Image painting time**

To optimize the image painting time, set the "WinCC Classic" design in the WinCC project 
properties.

**User authorization "No. 8 Controlling archives"**

User authorization "No. 8 Controlling archives" in User Administrator is no longer used by the 
system.

**Authorization check in WinCC ServiceMode**

There are three possible scenarios for WinCC in ServiceMode that influence the Runtime 
behavior through the authorization check:

- No Windows user logged on.  
  A user is defined as "User in service context" in WinCC User Administrator.  
  The authorizations of this user in the service context will be checked in Runtime. This setting 
  will influence the trigger authorization for the signaling device.

- No Windows user logged on.  
  No user is defined as "User in service context" in WinCC User Administrator.  
  The signaling device will always be activated in Runtime.

- A Windows user is logged on. Interactive user inputs are possible.  
  If a user is defined in the service context does not have an effect in Runtime.  
  The authorizations of the logged on WinCC user will be checked in Runtime.
1.3 WinCC/Connectivity Pack Installation Notes

1.3.1 Connectivity Pack licensing

Introduction

The WinCC/Connectivity Pack enables licensed access to online and archive data of WinCC. The Connectivity Pack includes licenses for access using:

- WinCC OPC XML DA Server
- WinCC OPC-DA Server
- WinCC OPC HDA Server
- WinCC OPC A&E Server
- WinCC OPC UA Server

Starting from WinCC/Connectivity Pack V7.0, a WinCC Client Access License (WinCC/CAL) is no longer required.

1.3.2 How to Install MS Message Queuing

Introduction

WinCC implements the Message Queuing services from Microsoft. It is a component part of the operating system. MS Message Queuing is however not included in the standard Windows installation and must be installed separately if required.

Note

WinCC is enabled for operation within a domain or workgroup.

Note however that domain group policies and restrictions in the domains may prevent installation. In this case, remove the computer from the domain before installing Microsoft Message Queuing, Microsoft SQL Server 2016 and WinCC. Log on to the computer concerned locally with administrator rights. Carry out the installation. Following successful installation, the WinCC computer can be registered in the domain again. If the domain-group policies and domain restrictions do not impair the installation, the computer must not be removed from the domain during installation.

Note however that domain group policies and restrictions in the domain may also hinder operation. If these restrictions cannot be overcome, operate the WinCC computer in a work group.

If necessary, contact the domain administrator.
Procedure - Windows 10

1. Go to "Control Panel > Programs and Features".
2. Click the "Turn Windows features on or off" button on the left menu bar.
   The "Windows Features" dialog opens.
3. Activate the "Microsoft Message Queue (MSMQ) server" component.
   The "Microsoft Message Queue (MSMQ) Server Core" entry is selected.
   The subcomponents remain disabled.
4. Confirm with "OK".


1. Start the Server Manager.
2. Click on "Add roles and features".
   The "Add Roles and Features Wizard" window opens.
3. Click "Server selection" in the navigation area.
   Ensure that the current computer is selected.
4. Click "Features" in the navigation area.
5. Select the following options:
   – "Message queuing"
   – The "Message Queuing Services" option below
   – The "Message Queuing Server" option below
6. Click "Install".

1.3.3 Installation of the Connectivity Pack Server

Introduction

The installation of the Connectivity Pack Server includes the following components:

- WinCC OLE DB Provider
- SQL Server 2016 SP2 64-bit
- "Automation License Manager" for Management of WinCC Licenses
- WinCC Archive Connector
- WinCC DataConnector
- WinCC Basic Components
- Documentation
- Examples


**Requirement**

- **Hardware requirement:**
  Observe the hardware requirements of WinCC V7.5 for WinCC servers.

- **Operating system:**
  - Windows 10 Pro / Enterprise / Enterprise LTSB (max. 3 clients) 64-bit
  - Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit
  - Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit

- Microsoft Message Queuing must be installed.

- Microsoft Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)

- For access to WinCC RT archives, WinCC V7.5 must be installed.

**Note**

To use more than three clients, you must install the server version.

With the workstation version, you can use max. three clients.

**Procedure**

1. In order to configure a computer as Connectivity Pack Server, run the Connectivity Pack Server setup on the computer.


**Licensing**

For operation of the Connectivity Pack Server, the license for the WinCC Connectivity Pack option is required.

**Access rights**

All the users of the WinCC/Connectivity Pack have to be included in the Windows user group "SIMATIC HMI".

The user has to be a member of the user group "SIMATIC HMI" on the Connectivity Pack server for remote access of a Connectivity Pack client.
1.3.4 Installation of the Connectivity Pack Client

Introduction

The installation of the Connectivity Pack Client includes the following components:

- WinCC OLE DB Provider
- WinCC DataConnector
- SQL Connectivity Tools
- Documentation

Note

In order to install the SQL Connectivity Tools, you will need administrator rights on the computer.

Requirement

- Operating system:
  - Windows 10 Pro / Enterprise / Enterprise LTSB 64-bit
  - Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit
  - Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit
- Microsoft Message Queuing must be installed.
- Microsoft Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)

Procedure

1. In order to configure a computer as Connectivity Pack Client, run the Connectivity Pack Client setup on the computer.
2. Select the "ConnectivityPack-Client" entry on the WinCC Product DVD in the "Program Packages" dialog.
3. If WinCC V7.5 is already installed on the client, an additional installation of the Connectivity Pack Client is not required.

Access rights

All the users of the WinCC/Connectivity Pack have to be included in the Windows user group "SIMATIC HMI".

The user has to be a member of the user group "SIMATIC HMI" on the Connectivity Pack server for remote access of a Connectivity Pack client.
1.4 WinCC/Connectivity Pack Release Notes

1.4.1 Information on the Connectivity Pack

Content

These release notes contain important information. The statements in these release notes take precedence over information provided in the manuals and in the online help. Please read these release notes carefully as they contain useful information.

Exchange of data between OPC client and Connectivity Station via OPC UA

A OPC UA server is implemented in the Connectivity Station which is available at the address "opc.tcp://[HostName]:[Port]".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HostName</th>
<th>Placeholder for the computer name; is inserted automatically.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>Port number. The default is &quot;4864&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Limitation for use of WinCC OLEDB Provider

As of WinCC V7.2, the function "Import" via the interface "WinCC OLEDB Provider" does not run in MS Office Excel.

Saving examples prior to uninstallation

When uninstalling the Connectivity Pack, the included examples are also uninstalled from the path "Installation Directory>SAMPLES". If you want to save the examples, you need to copy the files from this path to a different directory.
1.5 WinCC/DataMonitor Installation Notes

1.5.1 Requirements of installing DataMonitor

Introduction
Certain hardware and software configuration requirements must be fulfilled for installation.

Note
A DataMonitor server cannot be operated on a WinCC client without a project of its own.
Only use a DataMonitor server on a computer which is not operated in WinCC ServiceMode.

Hardware requirements
To work with WinCC/DataMonitor efficiently, select a system that meets the recommended specifications for an optimum configuration.

DataMonitor server

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DataMonitor server on WinCC server for more than 10 clients</th>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2.5 GHz</td>
<td>Multi core CPU; 3.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataMonitor server on WinCC server with WinCC project in Runtime</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataMonitor server on WinCC server</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>&gt; 4 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataMonitor server on WinCC single-user system or WinCC client with its own project</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>&gt; 4 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DataMonitor client

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>1 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software requirements
Certain requirements concerning operating system and software configuration must be met for the installation.

Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS)
Before installing the DataMonitor server, you must first install the Internet Information Service (IIS).
DataMonitor server on WinCC server

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Software</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit</td>
<td>Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit</td>
<td>WinCC Basic System V7.5 or WinCC File Server V7.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you want to publish Intranet information, the following is required:
- A network-capable computer with a LAN connection
- A system that converts computer names into IP addresses. This step allows users to use "alias names" instead of IP addresses when connecting to your server.

If you want to publish information in the Internet, the following is required:
- An Internet connection and an IP address from your Internet service provider (ISP). You can only publish information in the Internet, if you have a connection to the Internet provided by the ISP.
- A network adapter that is suitable for connecting to the Internet.
- A DNS registration for your IP address. This step allows users to use "alias names" instead of IP addresses when connecting to your server.

DataMonitor server on WinCC single-user system or WinCC client with its own project

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Software</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows 10 Pro / Enterprise / Enterprise LTB 64-bit (max. 3 clients)</td>
<td>Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit</td>
<td>WinCC Basic System V7.5 or WinCC File Server V7.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit                                | For the components "Excel Workbook Wizard“ and “Excel Workbook“:
|                                                                                | • Microsoft Office 2013 SP1 32-bit version    |
|                                                                                | • Microsoft Office 2016 32-bit version        |

You also need access to the Intranet/Internet or a TCP/IP connection to the Web client.

DataMonitor client

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Software</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows 7 SP1 Professional / Enterprise / Ultimate 32-bit / 64-bit</td>
<td>Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Windows 8.1 Pro / Enterprise / 32-bit / 64-bit                                 | For the components "Excel Workbook Wizard“ and “Excel Workbook“:
| Windows 10 Pro / Enterprise / LTB 64-bit                                       | • Microsoft Office 2013 SP1 32-bit version    |
| Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit                            | • Microsoft Office 2016 32-bit version        |
| Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit                                |                                               |
| Also other operating systems via MS Terminal Services                           |                                               |

You also need access to the Intranet / Internet or a TCP/IP connection to the Web server.
1.5.2 User rights for installing the DataMonitor client

Introduction
You can install the DataMonitor client as follows:

- Installation from the product DVD
  In this case, certain Windows user rights are necessary, depending on the operating system.

- Installation via the Intranet/Internet
  In this case, certain Windows user rights are necessary, depending on the operating system.

- Installation using the group policy-based software distribution in networks
  This can be done without any user interaction and using the Windows user permissions of the current user.

Windows user permissions required for installation and initial logon of the client
Depending on the operating system, specific minimum user rights are required to install the DataMonitor client via Intranet/Internet.

After installation, the client must log in with the following user identification for initial registration on the DataMonitor server:

- Under a user identification with Windows user rights higher or equal to those defined by the user identification that was given for the installation.

The connections must be established successfully. The subsequent logins can then be performed under a different Windows user authorization with possibly limited rights.

Minimum required user rights:

- Administrator

Installing the DataMonitor client with limited Windows user rights
Using Microsoft Windows Installer technology (MSI), DataMonitor clients can also be installed with limited Windows user permissions, i.e. permissions other than "Power user" or "Administrator".

This procedure can be set during the installation using the group policy based software distribution in networks.

Even the add-ins and plug-ins for the DataMonitor client can be installed in this way. The minimum user permissions described above are also required to install plug-ins created with WinCC Plug-In Builder.

Using MSI technology, it is also possible to install the DataMonitor client for a configured group of users or computers.

Installation for a configured group of users or computers
The following is possible with the Microsoft Systems Management Server or a group policy on a Domain Controller:

- The installation for a group of users or computers configured by the administrator
  - To do this, the "WinCCDataMonitorClient.msi" MSI file is published on the domain controller and then released for a user group. The installation is then performed according to the configuration of the group policy based software distribution either during login of the defined users or when the computer is started.
  - When using a Microsoft Systems Management Server, the installation is configured by the administrator, triggered and executed when the relevant computer boots. Additional information on Microsoft Systems Management Server is available in the Internet on the Microsoft Homepage.

**Group policy based software distribution**

The software installation is normally executed with the access rights of the current Windows user. When using MSI technology, the installation is performed by an operating system service with a higher level of rights. This enables installations to be performed for which the Windows user has no permission. Applications which require installations with a higher permission are referred to as "privileged installations" in MSI technology. Installation of these applications is possible when a Windows user is assigned the "Always install with elevated privileges" permission.

In order to use the group policy-based software distribution, a group policy is created on the domain controller and assigned to the distributing software or published using Active Directory.

- Assignment: The software distribution can be assigned to a user or a computer. In this case, the software to be distributed is automatically installed when the user logs in or the computer is started.
- Publication: The software distribution can be published for single users. In this case, when the user logs onto the client computer, the software to be distributed appears in a dialog and can be selected for installation.

### 1.5.3 Installing the Internet Information Service (IIS)

**Settings**

Before installing the DataMonitor server, you must first install the Internet Information Service (IIS). You specify the settings for the DataMonitor server during installation.
Select the following settings:

- Web management tools:
  - IIS management service
  - IIS management console
  - IIS management scripts and tools
  - Compatibility with IIS Metabasis and IIS 6 configuration
  - Compatibility with WMI for IIS 6

- WWW Services > Common HTTP Features or Shared HTTP Features:
  - Standard document
  - Static content
  - HTTP error

- WWW services > Application development features:
  - .NET extendibility
  - ASP
  - ASP.NET
  - ISAPI extensions
  - ISAPI filters

- WWW Services > security:
  - Request filtering
  - Basic Authentication
  - Windows authentication

**Note**

If the logging functions are active with IIS, the log files must be monitored and deleted, if necessary. The event views should be configured so that the log files do not become too large.

**Requirements**

- To do this, you must have administrator rights.

**Procedure**

1. Select “Programs and Features” from the Control Panel.

2. Click "Turn Windows features on or off" or "Add/Remove Windows Components".
3. Activate the settings specified above. You can also use the command line "Start > Run > cmd" to install the IIS components:

```
pkgmgr.exe /iu:IIS-WebServerRole;IIS-WebServer;IIS-CommonHttpFeatures;IIS-StaticContent;IIS-DefaultDocument;IIS-HttpErrors;IIS-ASPNET;IIS-ASP;IIS-ISAPIExtensions;IIS-ISAPIFilter;IIS-BasicAuthentication;IIS-WindowsAuthentication;IIS-ManagementConsole;IIS-ManagementService;IIS-IISEnterprise;IIS-IISScalingCompatibility;IIS-HttpCompression;IIS-Metabase;IIS-WMICompatibility
```

4. Click "OK" to close the dialog. The required data is transferred and the IIS is configured accordingly.

**Procedure for Windows Server 2012 R2 / 2016**

Configure the settings in the Server Manager using the "Webserver (IIS)" role in the associated role services.

### 1.5.4 Installing DataMonitor

**Introduction**

This chapter describes the installation of the DataMonitor server and DataMonitor client. Installation on the DataMonitor client depends on the DataMonitor tool used.

**DataMonitor server scope of installation**

A DataMonitor server is installed and set up as the web server to enable WinCC/DataMonitor to be used.

This installation allows you to access the WinCC runtime archive using "Trends & Alarms". Only "Webcenter" and "Trends & Alarms" are installed on a computer with WinCC file server, for example, used as an archive server, because the other components require WinCC Runtime. "Webcenter" and "Trends & Alarms" install all necessary components in the process.

**Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS)**

Before installing the DataMonitor server, you must first install the Internet Information Service (IIS).

**DataMonitor client installation conditions**

You need not install the DataMonitor client if you only want to use "Webcenter" and "Trends and Alarms".

You can install the Excel add-ins "ExcelWorkbook Wizard" and "Excel Workbook" individually under "Reports/Download area" on the DataMonitor start page for the "Reports".

"Microsoft Excel" is needed for "Excel Workbook". The following Office versions are approved:

- Microsoft Office 2013 SP1
- Microsoft Office 2016
Depending on the operating system, specific user rights may be required for installing the DataMonitor client. For additional information on this, see "User rights for installing the DataMonitor client".

---

**Note**

**Downloading the client setup**

To save the client setup on the client computer, select the "Save" option when downloading the client software from the DataMonitor server. It is recommended to save the Setup file because, in the event of a restart of the client computer being necessary, the Setup need not be downloaded again.

If the DataMonitor client has already been installed from DVD and you want to install an updated version of the client via the Intranet/Internet, you must save the client setup on the target computer.

If the DataMonitor client is a 64-bit computer, an additional link is displayed during installation over Intranet/Internet to install "Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable". You must first perform this installation because it is required for the DataMonitor client. In addition, "Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable" must be available as an "msi" packet. If the DataMonitor clients on the 64-bit computers are integrated in domain group policies, the users of the clients must install "DataMonitorClient_x64_AddOn.msi" themselves.

**Excel Workbook Wizard requires Microsoft .Net Framework**

In order to use Excel Workbook Wizard make sure that the .Net Framework is installed on the DataMonitor client.

**Client installation on a DataMonitor server**

Proceed as follows if you also wish to install the DataMonitor client or WebNavigator client on a DataMonitor server:

1. Use the Services Manager in Windows to set the start type of the "CCArchiveConnMon" service to manual.
2. Restart the computer.
3. Install the client.
   - Ensure that no WebNavigator clients or DataMonitor clients access the server during installation.
4. Switch the start type of the "CCArchiveConnMon" service back to automatic.

---

**Requirement**

- The DataMonitor server requires the [Internet Information Services (IIS)](Page 86).
- The DataMonitor server requires the WinCC configuration data.
- You need Windows "Administrator" rights to install the DataMonitor server.
Procedure

1. Insert the WinCC DVD into the DVD drive.
2. If the automatic execution of an autorun file is activated, after a few seconds the setup program starts automatically.
   The setup can also be started manually in case the installation is performed from a network drive or the autorun function has been disabled.
   The setup program is started.
3. To install, click the text "Install Software".
4. In the following dialog, select the component "DataMonitor Server" or "DataMonitor Client".
5. Follow the instructions of the setup program.

See also

Installing the Internet Information Service (IIS) (Page 86)

1.5.5 DataMonitor licensing

DataMonitor client

No license is required for the DataMonitor client on the computer.

The DataMonitor clients are licensed on the DataMonitor server. Install the license keys for the client access to the server on the DataMonitor server.

DataMonitor server

As a prerequisite for the WinCC basic system, the WinCC RT basic license is required.

Licenses are available for 1 / 3 / 10 / 30 clients that can simultaneously access the DataMonitor server. The licenses are cumulative.

A message will appear if the number of licensed clients is exceeded during a login attempt by a DataMonitor client. No further logins will be possible.

Note

The connection to the DataMonitor server is maintained if the user closes the DataMonitor start page without logging off with the "Log off" button.

The license remains allocated and is only released after approximately 20 minutes.
License count

DataMonitor distinguishes between the following function groups:

- **Excel Workbooks**
  A "WinCC DataMonitor" license is required on the server computer for each DataMonitor client.

- **Webcenter, Trends & Alarms, Reports**
  It is not the number of clients but the number of connections that is relevant for the license count for the Webcenter function group.

The following table shows the maximum number of clients or connections per license based on the function group. The values are valid only within a function group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>License</th>
<th>Excel Workbooks 1)</th>
<th>Webcenter, Trends &amp; Alarms, Reports 1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Client</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Clients</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 clients</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Clients</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) The same values apply even if you cumulate licenses.

In the following example, two licenses are installed on the DataMonitor server: "1 Client" a"3 Clients".

The following cumulative values apply depending on the selected function group:

**Example: Excel Workbooks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed licenses</th>
<th>Function group</th>
<th>Maximum logged on users</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;1 Client&quot; + &quot;3 Clients&quot;</td>
<td>Excel Workbooks</td>
<td>4 users</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example: Webcenter, Trends & Alarms, Reports**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed licenses</th>
<th>Function group</th>
<th>Maximum logged on users</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;1 Client&quot; + &quot;3 Clients&quot;</td>
<td>Webcenter, Trends &amp; Alarms, Reports</td>
<td>8 users</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**No operation without a valid license**

If no license is available, DataMonitor displays a page reporting the missing license. Check the existing licenses. If necessary, install the required licenses.

**Using DataMonitor versions prior to V7.4**

DataMonitor versions up to V7.3 do not recognize licenses from DataMonitor V7.4 and higher.

Once you install the current DataMonitor licenses on a computer, a DataMonitor installation of a version prior to V7.4 is no longer licensed.

This also applies if you upgrade to the new cumulative licenses through an upgrade license. The upgraded licenses are no longer recognized by DataMonitor V7.3 or earlier versions.
The upgrade to DataMonitor V7.4 or higher cannot be reversed.
1.6 WinCC/DataMonitor Release Notes

1.6.1 Notes about DataMonitor

Notes about DataMonitor

These release notes contain important information.

The statements in these release notes take precedence over information provided in the manuals and in the online help.

Please read these release notes carefully as they contain useful information.

Using a secure connection over HTTPS

To improve the security of your communication, configure the DataMonitor server in such a way that only HTTPS connections are supported.

You need a digital certificate for the DataMonitor server for this purpose. Also use SSL certificates on the DataMonitor clients.

Detailed information is available in the Microsoft Support under "How To Set Up an HTTPS Service in IIS" (http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069/EN-US (http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069)).

System load through large amounts of data

Note that SQL queries returning large amounts of data can affect system functionality.

Select filter criteria which limit the amount of data in a useful manner.

Opening Excel workbooks on a computer not connected to the Internet

If you want to use the DataMonitor client on a computer not connected to the Internet, you must deactivate certificate checking. To do this, follow these steps:

- Open Internet Explorer.
- Select the "Internet Options" command from the “Tools” menu.
- Click "Advanced".
- In the "Security" section, deactivate the setting "Check for publisher's certificate revocation".

Excel workbook functions and print jobs after deactivating and activating WinCC Runtime

If you deactivate WinCC Runtime and then reactivate it, you also need to restart the Web application.
Excel workbook: volume of requested data for archived values

Although you can limit the requested data volume with the "Data resolution" property, all data of the defined time period is initially used internally. This may have the result that the internal system limit is reached. Use compression archives to limit the data volume.

Web Client: Display of ActiveX controls in Internet Explorer

ActiveX controls are disabled in Internet Explorer by default. For this reason, the WinCC controls are not displayed correctly in Internet Explorer on a Web client.

To display the WinCC controls correctly, add the Web server as a trusted website and enable the ActiveX controls only for the "Trusted sites" zone.

To continue protecting Internet Explorer from foreign ActiveX controls, check that the restricted security settings still apply to the other zones after making the changes.

For more information, refer to the following documentation:

- WinCC/DataMonitor: "WinCC/DataMonitor Documentation > Configuring the DataMonitor System > Working with the DataMonitor Client > Configuring Security Settings in Internet Explorer"

DataMonitor server: Remote access to WinCC file server

Remove access from one DataMonitor server to a WinCC file server is possible only if the firewall is disabled on the WinCC file server.

Excel workbook: Local times on DataMonitor client and DataMonitor server

Note when requesting archive data that the local times on the server and client may differ if they have not been sufficiently synchronized, for example because automatic synchronization is not possible.

The DataMonitor client attempts to establish the current time of the DataMonitor server when archive data is requested. If it succeeds, the query will be based on the server time. For the display of data in the Excel table, the time stamp represents the server time but in the local time zone of the client.

If the query of the server time is unsuccessful, the DataMonitor client will base the time period of the query on its local time. An entry will also be made in the Windows event display on the DataMonitor client. For the display of data in the Excel table, the time stamp represents the client time.

Excel workbook: Client on terminal server

In the case of operation on a terminal server, an Excel Workbook client will run in a session of the terminal services. A maximum of only 10 Excel workbook clients can be operated; otherwise, MS Excel will overload the computer.
Trends & Alarms: Display of archive data after copying a project

To copy a WinCC project between computers and then display the archive data of the project on the target computer in "Trends & Alarms", you will first need to copy the project using the WinCC Project Duplicator.

If you use Windows Explorer rather than the Project Duplicator to copy the project, the runtime data will not be adapted to the target computer. The computer name of the source computer and not that of the target computer is displayed in the archive selection in "Trends and Alarms". The computer name of the target computer is displayed in the selection field only after the archive has been reset in Alarm Logging and Tag Logging.

See also

http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069 (http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069)
1.7 WinCC/WebNavigator Installation Notes

1.7.1 General information on the WebNavigator installation

Scope of delivery

You can find the following components for WinCC/WebNavigator on the WinCC DVD:

- WebNavigator server
- WebNavigator client
- WinCCViewerRT
- WebNavigator diagnostics client
- Web View Publisher
- WebNavigator Plug-In Builder
- Documentation
- Release notes

**Note**

**Installation of WinCC/WebNavigator V7.5 is only released on the basis of WinCC V7.5**

You cannot install the WebNavigator server/client of V7.5 on a computer with WinCC versions earlier than V7.5. Nor can a WebNavigator server/client version older than V7.5 be installed on a computer with WinCC V7.5.

Note that mixed use of European and Asian versions of WinCC and WebNavigator is not permitted in the configuration.

1.7.2 WebNavigator installation requirements

1.7.2.1 Hardware and software requirements for WebNavigator

**Introduction**

This section describes the hardware and operating system requirements for WinCC/WebNavigator.
Notes on the software requirements

Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS)
Before installing the WebNavigator Server, you must first install the Internet Information Service (IIS).

Note
A WebNavigator server cannot be operated on a WinCC client without a project of its own.

Internet Explorer 11
If you are using Internet Explorer 11, adjust the following settings:
1. Select the "Tools > Manage Add-ons" menu command.
These add-ons can have an adverse effect on the stability of Internet Explorer 11.

WebNavigator client

Hardware

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2 GHz</td>
<td>Multi core CPU; 3 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>1 GB</td>
<td>2 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Windows 7 SP1 Professional / Enterprise / Ultimate 32-bit / 64-bit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows 8.1 Pro / Enterprise 32-bit / 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows 10 Pro / Enterprise 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows 10 Enterprise LTSB 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Also other operating systems via MS Terminal Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows Embedded Standard 7 including SP1 in combination with SIMATIC IPC 4x7D and SIMATIC IPC 4x7E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator client: For installation via Intranet/Internet, the latest cumulative security update for Internet Explorer must be installed. Additional information is available in the Microsoft Update KB3072449.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Access to the intranet/Internet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>or a TCP/IP connection to the WebNavigator server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WinCC V7.5 Installation / Release Notes
1.7 WinCC/WebNavigator Installation Notes

WebNavigator server on a WinCC single-user system

**Hardware**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2.5 GHz</td>
<td>Multi core CPU; 3.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>2 GB</td>
<td>&gt; 4 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Software**

- Operating system: Windows 10 Pro / Enterprise 64-bit
- Windows 10 Enterprise LTSE 64-bit
- Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit
- Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit

- Software: Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)
- WinCC Basic System V7.5

**Other**

- Access to the intranet/Internet
- or a TCP/IP connection to the WebNavigator client

WebNavigator server on WinCC server or WinCC client with its own project

**Hardware**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2.5 GHz</td>
<td>Multi core CPU; 3.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Software**

- Operating system: Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit
- Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit

- Software: Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)
- WinCC Basic System V7.5

**Other**

- Access to Intranet/Internet

If you wish to publish on the Intranet, you will need a system that converts computer names into IP addresses. This step allows users to use alias names instead of IP addresses when connecting to the server.

You will need DNS registration for your IP address if you wish to publish on the Internet. This step allows users to use alias names instead of IP addresses when connecting to the server.
WebNavigator diagnostics client

Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Windows 7 SP1 Professional / Enterprise / Ultimate 32-bit / 64-bit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows 8.1 Pro / Enterprise 32-bit / 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows 10 Pro / Enterprise 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows 10 Enterprise LTSB 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software</td>
<td>Internet Explorer as of V11.0 (32-bit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Access to Intranet/Internet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

Installing the Internet Information Server (IIS) (Page 103)

1.7.2.2 Licensing WebNavigator

WebNavigator client

No license is required for the PC on which the WebNavigator client is running, as server licenses are available on the WebNavigator server.

WebNavigator server

As a prerequisite for the WinCC basic system, the WinCC RT basic license is required. No WinCC server license is required if no local WinCC clients are to be operated. Even when operating a WinCC client as a dedicated web server, you do not require a WinCC server license for the WinCC client.

Licenses are available for 1 / 3 / 10 / 30 / 100 clients. If you have upgraded a WebNavigator version prior to V7.4, there may also be licenses for 5 / 25 / 50 / 150 clients.

The packages are version-independent and can be combined. Up to 150 clients can access the WebNavigator server simultaneously.

A message will appear if the number of licensed clients is exceeded during a login attempt by a WebNavigator client. No further logins will be possible.

WinCC/WebUX clients

If the WinCC/WebUX option is also used in the WinCC system, a WebUX client can also occupy a WebNavigator license. This reduces the number of available WebNavigator licenses.

You can find more information in the documentation for WinCC/WebUX.

Test mode

If there is no WebNavigator license or if the license has been removed, the WebNavigator server runs in Test mode.
Test mode runs for a maximum of 30 days from the date of installation. Once 30 days have expired after the installation, the WebNavigator server can only be started with an installed license.

**WebNavigator diagnostics client**

A "Diagnostics client" license is required on the client computer for the diagnostics client. The diagnostics client can access on the WebNavigator server in the following cases:

- When the maximum number of simultaneous accesses has been reached on WebNavigator server.
- When no WebNavigator license is installed on the WebNavigator server.

**Diagnostics client without corresponding license**

If the diagnostics client is installed without the corresponding license, a message will appear about one hour after each start-up of the computer.

Install the diagnostics client license or remove the diagnostics client software.

**No access via RDP**

Access via Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) is not enabled for the diagnostics client.

**Note**

**Computer with WinCC basic system and diagnostics client**

If you install a diagnostics client on a computer with the WinCC basic system, you will have to reinstall the diagnostics client after removing WinCC.

**Overview of licenses for WebNavigator server and client**

You can combine WebNavigator and diagnostics licenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server</th>
<th>Client has no license ¹)</th>
<th>Client has diagnostics client license ¹)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No WinCC license</td>
<td>Client in test mode Unlimited number</td>
<td>Client in test mode Unlimited number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No WebNavigator license</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC license</td>
<td>Client in test mode Unlimited number</td>
<td>Diagnostics client One license per diagnostics client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No WebNavigator license</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator license</td>
<td>Client in test mode Unlimited number</td>
<td>Client in test mode Unlimited number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No WinCC license</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator license + WinCC license</td>
<td>WebNavigator client Number up to maximum of the server license</td>
<td>Diagnostics client One license per diagnostics client</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Server

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Server Configuration</th>
<th>Client has no license</th>
<th>Client has diagnostics client license</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator license</td>
<td>WebNavigator client</td>
<td>Diagnostics client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ WinCC license</td>
<td>Number up to maximum of the server license</td>
<td>One license per diagnostics client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ &quot;Load Balancing&quot; license</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator license</td>
<td>WebNavigator client</td>
<td>Diagnostics client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ WinCC license</td>
<td>Number up to maximum of the server license</td>
<td>One license per diagnostics client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ WinCC Redundancy license</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ &quot;Load Balancing Step-Up&quot; license</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Note the behavior in test mode. Test mode runs for a maximum of 30 days from the date of installation.

### Restarting the WebNavigator client after license modification

If the WebNavigator licenses on the WebNavigator server are modified, e.g. to a different number of clients, Internet Explorer must be restarted on each connected WebNavigator client, and the WebNavigator client must log in again. Otherwise, the WebNavigator client will switch to demo mode. This also applies to automatic reconnection of the WebNavigator client.

### Using WebNavigator versions prior to V7.4

WebNavigator versions up to V7.3 do not recognize licenses from WebNavigator V7.4 and higher.

Once you install the current WebNavigator licenses on a computer, a WebNavigator installation of a version prior to V7.4 is no longer licensed.

This also applies if you upgrade to the new cumulative licenses through an upgrade license. The upgraded licenses are no longer recognized by WebNavigator V7.3 or earlier versions.

It is not possible to undo the upgrade to WebNavigator V7.4 or higher.

### 1.7.2.3 Requirements for the Use of Terminal Services

The WebNavigator client is released for Windows Terminal Services.

A maximum of 150 sessions per terminal server are permitted.

### Terminal server

#### Hardware

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Dual core CPU; 2 GHz</td>
<td>Multi core CPU; 3 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work memory</td>
<td>1 GB</td>
<td>2 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Each terminal client will increase the memory requirements and the processor load. You must therefore ensure that the terminal server has adequate memory and processor load capacity.
1.7 WinCC/WebNavigator Installation Notes

Software

| Operating system | Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit
|                  | Windows Server 2016 Standard / Datacenter 64-bit
|                  | It must be possible to repeatedly call and execute applications that are to be executed on the clients.
| Miscellaneous:   | If many users want to access the server, you will need to use a high-performance network card.

Terminal client

| Minimum requirement: | Network card with TCP/IP
|                      | Terminal client RDP 5.0
|                      | Display or monitor
|                      | Pointing device

Note

As with Windows Server CAL, there are two different CAL terminal services:

- The TS device CAL enables a device to run user-independent Windows sessions on a Windows Server.
- The TS user CAL enables a user to run device-independent Windows sessions on a Windows Server.

A Windows Server Terminal Server CAL “TS CAL” is required for every user or every device.

Please go to "http://www.microsoft.com/resources/sam/lic_cal.mspx" for more information.

See also

http://www.microsoft.com/resources/sam/lic_cal.mspx

1.7.3 Installing a WebNavigator server

1.7.3.1 Overview: Installing the WebNavigator server

Requirements

- The software requirements for the Windows operating system have been met.
- Local administrator rights.
- The WinCC basic system is installed.
NOTICE

WebNavigator server: Using a secure connection over HTTPS

To increase the security of your communication, configure the WebNavigator server in such a way that only HTTPS connections are supported. You need a digital certificate for your WebNavigator server for this. For more information, refer to "How to Set Up an HTTPS Service in IIS" in Microsoft Support:

- http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069

Installation Overview

1. Installation of the Internet Information Server (IIS).
2. Installation of the WebNavigator server.

Note

WinCC options previously installed

If you have already installed other WinCC options prior to the installation of WinCC/WebNavigator, you may have to re-install these options.

See also

- Installing the Internet Information Server (IIS) (Page 103)
- Installing the WebNavigator server (Page 105)
- http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069

1.7.3.2 Installing the Internet Information Server (IIS)

Settings

Before installing the WebNavigator server, you must first install the Internet Information Service (IIS). You specify the settings for the WebNavigator server during installation.
Select the following settings:

- Web management tools:
  - IIS management service
  - IIS management console
  - IIS management scripts and tools
  - Compatibility with IIS Metabasis and IIS 6 configuration
  - Compatibility with WMI for IIS 6
- WWW Services > Common HTTP Features or Shared HTTP Features:
  - Standard document
  - Static content
- WWW services > Application development features:
  - .NET extendibility
  - ASP
  - ASP.NET
  - ISAPI extensions
  - ISAPI filters
- WWW Services > security:
  - Request filtering
  - Basic Authentication
  - Windows authentication

Note
If the logging functions are active with IIS, the log files must be monitored and deleted, if necessary. The event views should be configured so that the log files do not become too large.

Requirements
- Administrator rights
- Write access for the registration database

Procedure
1. Select "Programs and Features" from the Control Panel.
2. Click "Turn Windows features on or off" or "Add/Remove Windows Components".
3. Activate the settings specified above.
4. Click "OK" to close the dialog. The required data is transferred and the IIS is configured accordingly.
Alternative procedure

Alternatively, you can use the command line "Start > Run > cmd" to install the IIS components located on the installation data medium:

pkgmgr.exe /iu:IIS-WebServerRole;IIS-WebServer;IIS-CommonHttpFeatures;IIS-StaticContent;IIS-DefaultDocument;IIS-HttpErrors;IIS-ASPNET;IIS-ASP;IIS-ISAPIExtensions;IIS-ISAPIFilter;IIS-BasicAuthentication;IIS-WindowsAuthentication;IIS-ManagementConsole;IIS-ManagementService;IIS-IIS6ManagementCompatibility;IIS-Metabase;IIS-WMICompatibility


Configure the settings in the Server Manager using the "Webserver (IIS)" role in the associated role services.

See also

Hardware and software requirements for WebNavigator (Page 96)

1.7.3.3 Installing the WebNavigator server

Requirements

- Local administrator rights
- The Internet Information Server is installed.

Procedure

1. Insert the WinCC DVD in the drive.
   The DVD starts automatically if Autorun is enabled in the operating system.
   If the autorun function is not activated, start the program Setup.exe on the DVD.
2. In the "Installation Type" dialog, select "Package Installation".
3. Select the "WebNavigator Server" installation.
4. Before the installation, the security settings that are adapted for WinCC are displayed in the "System Settings" dialog.
   The firewall is configured automatically.
   Confirm the changes to the system settings.
5. Start the installation.
   You can track the status of the installation in the displayed dialog.
   Select "Cancel" to cancel the installation.
6. You can transfer the license key for the product after installation of the WebNavigator server. To do so, click on "Transfer License Key". Select "Next" if you have already transferred the license key or want to install it at a later time.

   **Note**
   
   License keys will not be transferred automatically.
   You will have to transfer missing license keys during or after installation with "Automation License Manager".

7. Restart the computer when prompted to do so by setup.

**Result**

The WebNavigator server is installed and is displayed in the navigation window of the WinCC Explorer.

### 1.7.4 Installing the WebNavigator client

#### 1.7.4.1 Installing the WebNavigator client

**Introduction**

You can install the WebNavigator client as follows:

- Installation from the WinCC product DVD.
  In this case, certain Windows user rights are necessary, depending on the operating system.

- Installation via the Intranet/Internet.
  In this case, certain Windows user rights are necessary, depending on the operating system.

- Installation without user interaction:
  - Using the Windows user rights of the current user
  - Or in networks, using group policy-based software distribution

In addition, you can also install the WebNavigator client on the WebNavigator server. This is useful, for example, if you want to check the WinCC project locally on the server in Internet Explorer.

**Note**

**.Net controls on the WebNavigator client**

If you wish to use .Net controls on the WebNavigator client, you need to install the .Net Framework 4.0 or higher on the client from the WinCC product DVD.
WinCCViewerRT

The web viewer "WinCCViewerRT" is installed upon installation of the WebNavigator client.

Procedure

1. Entry and check of the settings of the client computer in Internet Explorer.
2. Installation of the WebNavigator client.

Note

If you are installing from the DVD or using software distribution based on group policy, you can directly upgrade an older version of the WebNavigator client without having to remove the older client first.

If you install the WebNavigator server on a PC after the WebNavigator client, you will have to install the client again.

Plug-in reinstallation

The plug-ins "User Archive Control", "FunctionTrend Control", "Hardcopy" and "Web Client" are already integrated in the WebNavigator client as of version V7.0 upon installation.

If a WebNavigator client as of V7.0 is connected to a WebNavigator server older than V7.0 (e.g. V6.2 SP3), you will be offered these plug-ins for installation in the download area of the Web navigation user interface.

The plug-ins are already installed. Do not reinstall these plug-ins.

Information on the setup and installation of the WebNavigator client:

- Before downloading and installing a new version on the WebNavigator client, check the languages installed on the client and connected server. Only the languages of the connected server will be available on the client computer following client installation by download.

- WebNavigator client setup will be interrupted with the error message "WinCC Active" if the local WinCC project is open or has been opened since the PC was last restarted. Restart the computer. Check whether WinCC has been included in the Autostart directory. Remove the entry if necessary and then restart the computer to execute WebNavigator client installation.

- You will need at least 70 MB of free memory space on the local hard disk to install the WebNavigator client. Otherwise, the MSI setup will cancel installation with a corresponding error message.

- When installing the WebNavigator client by downloading it from the Intranet/Internet, you can select to either "Open" or "Save" the setup file. The procedure you select upon initial installation of the WebNavigator client must also be selected for the subsequent installation of plug-ins or ActiveX controls. Otherwise, the "MSI Installer" service will output the error message "Error 1316".
Prior to installation via download, the latest cumulative security update for Internet Explorer must be installed. Additional information is available in the Microsoft Update KB3072449 (https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/3072449).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable must be installed on the WebNavigator client with a 64-bit computer before the connection to the WebNavigator server is established. If the client is a 64-bit computer, an additional link is displayed during installation over the Intranet/Internet to install "Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable". You must first perform this installation because it is required for the Web client.

**Note**

**Installation of Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable in domain environments**

In addition, "Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable" must be available as an "msi" packet:

- If the WebNavigator client on the 64-bit computer is not upgraded to the latest version via the DVD, "WinNavigatorClient.msi" and "WinNavigatorClient_x64_AddOn.msi" can be made available to the user via the domain controller.
- If the WebNavigator clients on the 64-bit computers are integrated in domain group policies, the users of the clients must install "WinNavigatorClient_x64_AddOn.msi" themselves.

In the download area of the Web Navigation user interface, the Plug-Ins which can be installed are displayed. The same minimum user rights are required for installing these plug-ins as for installation of the WebNavigator client. If you select a plug-in in the Web Navigation user interface, WebNavigator client setup will start. You will have to confirm the selected plug-in again.

**Upgrading the WebNavigator client from a previous version**

You can download and install the demo project from the "WinCC/WebNavigator and WinCC/DataMonitor Demo Access" page at "www.wincc.de".

The system checks whether the latest version of WebNavigator client is installed. If an older version is present, the WebNavigator client is also upgraded when you access the demo project.

**Upgrade from WinCC V6.2 SP3**

Perform a repair installation after upgrading from WinCC V6.2 SP3. Start the WinCC/WebNavigator client installation in the Control Panel via "Uninstall or change a program" and select "Repair". Otherwise, controls may be reinstalled during operation. Restart the computer.

**Installing the WebNavigator client under Windows Server**

Installation of the WebNavigator client under Windows Server with a lower user authorization than "Administrator" is not possible in the default setting of group policies.
Enable the installation of the WebNavigator client in the group policy by

- Assigning and making the software public
- Or activating the setting "Always install with elevated privileges" under "Administrative Templates / Windows Components / Windows Installer".
  You must activate "Never" for the "Deactivate Windows Installer" option.

See also

https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/3072449

1.7.4.2 User rights and user groups for WebNavigator clients

Windows user rights required for installation and initial registration of the WebNavigator client

"Administrator" rights are required for installing the WebNavigator client via Intranet/Internet or using the product DVD. The initial registration of the client on the WebNavigator server must take place with the user identification used during installation and the same or higher Windows user rights. The connections must be established successfully. All subsequent logins can then be performed by users with different Windows user rights, which may be more restricted.

Windows user groups "SIMATIC HMI" / "SIMATIC HMI VIEWER"

Following WinCC installation, WinCC automatically establishes the following local groups in Windows User and Group Administration:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group Name</th>
<th>Access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC HMI</td>
<td>These members may create local projects, and may process, start, and access these projects remotely. Access to the WinCC database is limited to the minimum rights necessary (read/write).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC HMI Viewer</td>
<td>These members have read access only to configuration and runtime data in the WinCC database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the following cases you must add users of the WebNavigator client to a Windows user group:

- The WebNavigator client is installed on a PC on which WinCC is already installed: Users of the Web client must be members of the user group "SIMATIC HMI VIEWER" or "SIMATIC HMI".
- The WebNavigator client accesses the WebNavigator server as "Remote Desktop" user: Users of the Web client must be members of the user group "SIMATIC HMI VIEWER".

Installing the WebNavigator client with limited Windows user rights

The MSI technology used allows you to install the WebNavigator client even with limited Windows user rights. This procedure can be set during the installation using the group policy based software distribution in networks.

Even the add-ins and plug-ins for the WebNavigator client can be installed. "Administrator" rights are required for the installation of plug-ins that were created with the WinCC Plug-In Builder.
Installation for a configured group of users or computers

Using the Microsoft Systems Management server or group policy on a Domain Controller, it is possible to install a group of users or computers configured by the Administrator.

- For this the MSI file "WinCCWebNavigatorClient.msi" is published at the Domain Controller and enabled for a user group. Installation is then performed either during login of the defined users or when the computer is started, depending on the configuration of the group policy-based software distribution.
- When using a Microsoft Systems Management Server, the installation is configured by the administrator, triggered and executed when the relevant computer boots.

Group policy-based software distribution

Software is normally installed with the access rights of the current Windows user. When using MSI technology, the installation is performed by an operating system service with a higher level of rights. This enables installations for which the Windows user does not have the necessary rights. Applications which require higher rights for installation are referred to as "privileged installations" in MSI technology. Installation of these applications is possible when a Windows user is assigned the "Always install with elevated privileges" permission.

A group policy is created in the domain controller for use of group policy-based software distribution. The software to be distributed is then assigned or made public using Active Directory.

- Assignment: Software distribution can be assigned to a user or a computer. The software to be distributed is automatically installed when the user logs in or the computer is started.
- Publication: The software distribution can be published for individual users. When the user logs on to the client computer, the software to be distributed appears in a dialog and can be selected for installation.

1.7.4.3 Internet Explorer settings (WebNavigator client)

Introduction

You have to adapt the Internet Explorer security settings in order to utilize full functionality of the WebNavigator Client.

Procedure

1. Click "Tools > Internet Options" in Internet Explorer.
2. Select the "Security" tab.
   Select the corresponding zone, for example, "Local Intranet" or "Internet".
3. Click "Custom Level...".
4. Enable the "Script ActiveX controls marked safe for scripting" and "Download signed ActiveX controls" options.
5. Enable "Active Scripting" under "Scripting".
6. Click "OK". Carry out the modifications in the subsequent dialog.
7. Click the "Trusted Sites" icon. Click the "Sites..." button to open the "Trusted sites" dialog.

8. Enter the address of the WebNavigator Server in the "Add this website to the zone" field. Possible formats and wildcards include "*:157.54.100 - 200", "ftp://157.54.23.41", or "http://*.microsoft.com". Deactivate the "Require server verification (https:) for all sites in this zone" option. Click "Add". Click "OK".

9. Click the "Trusted Sites" icon. Click the "Standard level" button and then the "Custom Level" button. Enable "Initialize and script ActiveX controls not marked as safe". Click "OK".

10. Click on the "General" tab. Click in the "Settings" area on the "Temporary Internet Files" button. Enable the "Automatic" option under "Check for newer versions of stored pages:". Click "OK".

11. Close the "Internet Options" dialog by clicking "OK".

See also

Hardware and software requirements for WebNavigator (Page 96)

1.7.4.4 Installation from the DVD (WebNavigator client)

Requirements

- For the installation and use of the WebNavigator client, the information in Internet Explorer settings (WebNavigator client) (Page 110) applies.

- Depending on the operating system, specific minimum user rights are required to install the WebNavigator client; see User rights and user groups for WebNavigator clients (Page 109).

Procedure

1. Insert the WinCC DVD in the drive. The DVD starts automatically if Autorun is enabled in the operating system. If the Autorun function is not activated, start the program Setup.exe on the DVD.

2. In the "Installation Type" dialog, select "Package Installation".

3. Select the "WebNavigator Client" program package.

4. Before the installation, the security settings that are adapted for WinCC are displayed in the "System Settings" dialog. The firewall is configured automatically. Confirm the changes to the system settings.

5. Start the installation. You can track the status of the installation in the displayed dialog. Select "Cancel" to cancel the installation.

6. Restart the computer when prompted to do so by setup.
Result

The WebNavigator client is now installed and has been added as a function to the navigation window of the WinCC Explorer.

1.7.4.5 Installation via the Intranet/Internet (WebNavigator client)

Requirements

- For the installation and use of the WebNavigator client, the information in Internet Explorer settings (WebNavigator client) (Page 110) applies.
- Depending on the operating system, specific minimum user rights are required to install the WebNavigator client; see User rights and user groups for WebNavigator clients (Page 109).
- The WebNavigator server must be installed on a computer. The Internet Information Server must be configured with the WinCC Web Configurator. The users must be registered in the WinCC User Administrator. The WinCC project must be in runtime.
- The latest cumulative security update for Internet Explorer must be installed. This applies to all installed versions of Internet Explorer. See the following Microsoft article:
- Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable must be installed on the WebNavigator client with a 64-bit computer before the connection to the WebNavigator server is established.

Procedure

1. Go to the address bar of Internet Explorer and enter the URL "http://www.servername" of the WebNavigator server. For installation in a virtual directory, the address can be as follows: "http:// www.servername/WebNavigator/".
2. Type in the user name and password.
3. The first time you access the WebNavigator server, you will be prompted to install the WebNavigator client. If the client is a 64-bit computer, an additional link is displayed in order to install "Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable". You must first perform this installation because it is required for the Web client.
4. Click on the link "Click here to install WebNavigator Client". Click the "Save" button in the "File Download" dialog to store the client setup on the target computer. It is recommended to save the Setup file because, in the event of a restart of the client computer being necessary, the Setup need not be downloaded again.

**Note**

If you have installed the WebNavigator client without installing "Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable", you can also install the software later via the "Web Navigator and System Updates" menu in the "download area" of the Navigation user interface of "MainControl.asp".

If you have already installed the WebNavigator client and wish to install a more recent version via the Intranet/Internet, open the client setup straight away. You do not need to save the installation file on the target computer. Remove the old installation file first if you wish to save the new one. Alternatively, you can save the new version of the file in a different directory.

5. Leave the Internet Explorer open and open Windows Explorer. Navigate to the directory in which you saved the setup file. Start setup by double-clicking on the file.

6. Follow the instructions on the screen and enter the information and settings necessary. The client-side controls of the WebNavigator will be installed. Close the Setup dialog.

**Result**

Following successful installation, the WebNavigator client connects to the WinCC project currently in runtime.

**Note**

If you want to use the on-screen keyboard, you also have to install .net 4.0 or higher. If you install the WebNavigator client from the WinCC DVD, .net 4.0 is already included.

**See also**

https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/3072449

### 1.7.5 Installing the WebNavigator diagnostics client

**Introduction**

The software for the WebNavigator diagnostics client is installed on the client computer from the DVD.
Requirements

- To do this, you must have administrator rights.
- Access via Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) is not enabled for the diagnostics client.

Procedure

1. Insert the WinCC DVD in the drive.
   The DVD starts automatically if Autorun is enabled in the operating system.
   If the Autorun function is not activated, start the program Setup.exe on the DVD.
2. In the "Installation Type" dialog, select "Custom Installation".
3. Select the "Diagnose Client" program in the "Web Navigator" program group.
4. Before the installation, the security settings that are adapted for WinCC are displayed in
   the "System Settings" dialog. The firewall is configured automatically.
   Confirm the changes to the system settings.
5. Start the installation.
   You can track the status of the installation in the displayed dialog.
   Select "Cancel" to cancel the installation.
6. Restart the computer when prompted to do so by setup.

Result

The WebNavigator diagnostics client is now installed.

1.7.6 WebNavigator Demo Project

Introduction

The WinCC Demo Project can be downloaded as a self-extracting ZIP file from:

Installation

To install the project, copy the file in a local target directory and start the decompressing
process by double-clicking the file.

The following logins are already configured in the demo project:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WinCC</th>
<th>Login</th>
<th>Password</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator German</td>
<td>winccd</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator English</td>
<td>wince</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator French</td>
<td>winccf</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator Italian</td>
<td>wincci</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### WinCC Login Password

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Login</th>
<th>Password</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WebNavigator Spanish</td>
<td>winccs</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal PocketPC</td>
<td>PocketPC</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal Mobic</td>
<td>Mobic</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal MP370</td>
<td>MP370</td>
<td>winccpass</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### See also


### 1.7.7 Uninstalling the WebNavigator

#### Introduction

You can remove the WebNavigator server and WebNavigator client in the usual way, as in Windows.

#### Procedure: Uninstalling via the WinCC Product DVD

1. Start the WinCC product DVD.
   - The DVD starts automatically if Autorun is enabled in the operating system.
   - If the Autorun function is not activated, start the program Setup.exe on the DVD.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
3. Select "Remove" as the setup type.
4. Select the components that you want to remove.

#### Alternative procedure: Uninstalling via the Control Panel

1. Open the "Uninstall or change a program" dialog in the Windows Control Panel.
2. Select the WebNavigator server or client and click "Remove".
   - Follow the instructions on the screen.

#### Result

The WebNavigator Server or WebNavigator client has now been removed from the computer.
1.8 WinCC/WebNavigator Release Notes

1.8.1 Information about WebNavigator

Introduction

These release notes contain important information.

The statements in these release notes take precedence over information provided in the manuals and in the online help.

Please read these release notes carefully as they contain useful information.

Notes on the security of the system

For the secure operation of Siemens products and solutions, it is necessary to take suitable preventive action (e.g. cell protection concept) and integrate each component into a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Third-party products that may be in use should also be considered. You will find more information about industrial security under http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity (http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity).

Security restrictions with the WebNavigator client

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security restrictions and response times in Internet Explorer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please note the Internet-specific security restrictions when using the WebNavigator client. The WebNavigator client may take significantly longer (&gt;20 seconds) than a regular WinCC client to recognize that the WebNavigator server is down or that the communication is faulty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using a secure connection over HTTPS

To increase the security of your communication, configure the WebNavigator server in such a way that only HTTPS connections are supported.

You need a digital certificate for the WebNavigator server for this. Also use the SSL certificate on the WebNavigator client.

Detailed information is available in the Microsoft Support under "How To Set Up an HTTPS Service in IIS" (http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069/EN-US (http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069)).
Communication via proxy server

Please note the following for communication using a proxy server:

- The WebNavigator client must be a member of the server domain.
- If the users registered on the WebNavigator client have no access to the proxy server, logon to the proxy server with NTLM authentication is as follows:
  1. The logon dialog for the proxy server appears.
  2. The logon dialog for the WinCC user appears.
  3. The logon dialog for the proxy server appears again.

Avoid cross-site request forgery for the WebNavigator

Cross-site request forgery is similar to the vulnerability caused by cross-site scripting (XSS, Cross Site Scripting).

The attack is triggered when an authenticated user clicks on a malicious link. This vulnerability exists even if scripting is deactivated in the browser.

Siemens recommends:

- Do not work with other applications or services that have anything to do with the Internet.
- Log off when you do not need the WebNavigator any longer

Defense in depth

See the notes on "Industrial Security" on the Siemens website:


General information about WebNavigator

Uninstalling WinCC: WebNavigator client must be installed later

If you uninstall WinCC, you will need to post-install the WebNavigator client.

Security settings in Internet Explorer: Installation via SSL connection

If you want to download the WebNavigator from an ASP portal via an SSL connection, note that the download is not possible under certain conditions. You can correct this with one of the following settings:

- Deactivate the "Do not save encrypted pages to disk" option in the "Advanced" tab for the Internet options of the Internet Explorer.
- Deactivate the "Internet Explorer Enhanced Security Configuration" option in the "Control Panel/Add/Remove Programs/Windows Components".
Message after installation of a plug-in

The Program Compatibility Wizard may possibly output an message during installation of a plug-in. The plug-in is installed correctly. You may therefore acknowledge this message with "The program was installed correctly."

Project Change

Following a change of projects, a sporadic inoperable period of the Internet Information Services (IIS) may occur. The computer must then be restarted.

WebNavigator server: Configure a port other than the standard port "80"

When configuring the port in the WinCC Web Configurator, use "8080", for example, rather than the standard port "80".

WebNavigator client: Internet Explorer setting with Windows Server 2012

To allow the start screen to be loaded on Windows Server 2012 with the WebNavigator client, you need to disable the setting "Do not save encrypted pages to disk" in Internet Explorer under "Tools > Internet Options > Advanced".

WebNavigator client: Display of ActiveX controls in Internet Explorer

ActiveX controls are disabled in Internet Explorer by default. For this reason, the WinCC controls are not displayed correctly in Internet Explorer on a WebNavigator client.

To display the WinCC controls correctly, add the Web server as a trusted website and enable the ActiveX controls only for the "Trusted sites" zone.

To continue protecting Internet Explorer from foreign ActiveX controls, check that the restricted security settings still apply to the other zones after making the changes.

For more information, refer to the following documentation:

- WinCC/WebNavigator: "WinCC/WebNavigator Installation Notes > Installation of WebNavigator Client > Settings in Internet Explorer"

WebNavigator client: Firewall settings for printing from WinCC controls

To be able to print out on the client, you need to define the following Firewall settings for the profiles used:

1. Open "Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall".
2. In the navigation bar, click "Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall".
3. In the "Allowed programs and features:" list, activate the entry "File and printer sharing" for the relevant profile.
4. Return to the Windows Firewall start page.
5. In the navigation bar, click “Turn Windows Firewall on or off”.
6. If the Firewall is enabled, disable the setting “Block all incoming connections, including those in the list of allowed programs.”

**WebNavigator client: WinCC Computer with "Basic Process Control"**

The plug-in "WinCC Basic Process Control" must be installed on the WebNavigator client if the client is connected to a computer with WinCC Basic Process Control. Without the plug-in, the functionality of WinCC Basic Process Control will not be available on the WebNavigator client. For example, the relevant ActiveX controls and the group display will not be available.

The plug-in is on the WebNavigator server in the "<wincc_installationpath>\WebNavigator\Server\Web\Install\Custom" directory. You can download the plug-in via the WebNavigator navigation user interface from the download area.

A description of supported and non-supported functions may be found in WinCC Information System under "Options for Process Control > System Overview Process Control Options > Configuration in PCS 7 Environment > Web Client".

If the WebNavigator client is to be installed on a dedicated web server with WinCC Basic Process Control, the plug-in "WinCC Basic Process Control" must be installed immediately after installation of the WebNavigator client. The download page for the plug-in is displayed. You will only be able to exit this page after installation of the plug-in for displaying the process pictures.

For more information on the supported functionalities of the WebNavigator client when connected to a PCS7 OS, please refer to the PCS7 documentation.

**WebNavigator client: Updating pictures with faceplates**

To enable updating of changes to pictures with faceplates, you must enable the setting "Every time I visit the webpage" in the settings for temporary Internet files in Internet Explorer.

**WebNavigator client: ODK function "PWRTCheckPermissionOnPicture"**

In order to use the ODK function "PWRTCheckPermissionOnPicture" on a WebNavigator client, install the plug-in "WinCC Basic Process Control" and "Advanced Process Control".

**WebNavigator client: WinCC Alarm Control on a WebNavigator server in WinCC ServiceMode**

**Initial Situation**

The WebNavigator client is connected with a WebNavigator server operated in WinCC ServiceMode.

**Behavior**

If you are using WinCC Alarm Control prior to WinCC V7 that is connected via a server prefix, you will not be able to open the selection dialog.

**Solution**

Use the WinCC AlarmControl that is offered as of WinCC V7.
WebNavigator client: Diagnostics file "WebNavReconnect.log"

After installation of the WebNavigator client, the diagnostics file "WebNavReconnect.log" is saved in the "<User>\Application Data\LocalLow\Siemens\SIMATIC.WinCC\WebNavigator\Client" directory.

The diagnostics file will be saved into the respective user profile so that this user no longer requires administrator rights.

WebNavigator client: "FLAG_COMMENT_DIALOG" of the "GCreateMyOperationMsg" function

The WebNavigator client does not support the parameter "FLAG_COMMENT_DIALOG" for the "GCreateMyOperationMsg" function.

Custom ActiveX controls (Industrial X)

Compatibility with WinCC and WebNavigator server or WebNavigator client must be ensured if custom ActiveX controls (Industrial X) are used:

- Direct installation of the ActiveX control on the computer with WinCC and WebNavigator server or client. You must install the ActiveX control before installing WinCC and the WebNavigator server or client. If the ActiveX control does not function without errors after this step, there is no compatibility.

- Installation as a plug-in via the Web Navigation user interface on the WebNavigator client. If the ActiveX Control is packaged in a plug-in and installed via download, an upgrade of WinCC and the WebNavigator server or client will also require the generation of a new plug-in using this ActiveX control. Ensure compatible binaries (DLL, OCX, etc.) are used when creating the plug-in.

See also

http://support.microsoft.com/kb/959658
http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069
http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity
1.9 WinCC/WebUX

1.9.1 WebUX licensing

The WinCC/WebUX basic package with an integrated WinCC WebUX Monitor license is included in WinCC.

WebUX client

The WebUX clients are licensed on the WebUX server.
No license is required for the WebUX client on the computer.

WebUX server

The WebUX server is installed on a WinCC system. The WinCC basic system requires at least the WinCC basic RT license.

The license keys are differentiated as described below and run in parallel on the WinCC/WebUX server:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>License</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WinCC WebUX Monitor</td>
<td>The user has only read access.</td>
<td>The authorization level 1002 &quot;Web access - monitoring only&quot; is configured for the user in the User Administrator. If the available &quot;Monitor&quot; licenses have been allocated, an &quot;Operate&quot; license or a WebNavigator license can also be allocated to a WebUX client for read access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC WebUX Operate</td>
<td>User has read and write access</td>
<td>If the available &quot;Operate&quot; licenses have been allocated, a WebNavigator license can also be allocated to a WebUX client for read or write access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC/WebNavigator</td>
<td>The user's authorizations determine whether write access is possible in addition to read access.</td>
<td>If a WinCC/WebNavigator license is also installed in the WinCC system, the WebNavigator license can also be allocated to a WebUX client. First, however, all available WebUX licenses are used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

License packages

The license packages are available with 1, 3, 10, 30 and 100 clients.
If you have upgraded from WebUX V7.3, there may also be licenses for 5 / 25 / 50 / 150 clients.
If the number of licensed clients is exceeded during the logon attempt by a WebUX client, no further logon is permitted.

The packages are version-independent and can be combined.

Reserved license

A reserved WebUX license always gives the user guaranteed access to the WebUX server.
A connection remains reserved for the user. The number of freely available WebUX licenses is reduced by each configured reserved license.

Applications
Possible applications include:

- Remote operator access:
  If the connections to the WebUX server are occupied by read-only access, a connection remains reserved for operation.

- Central display:
  Central client stations are always connected, for example, to display the status of the WinCC system.

Reserve WebUX license
In the User Administrator, you assign one of the available licenses to a WebUX user as a reserve license.

To do this, enable the "Reserve WebUX license" option for the user. The field "WebUX Number of reserved licenses" shows how many WebUX licenses are assigned through reservation.

Reserved licenses cannot be configured for user groups, only for individual users.

If more reserved licenses are configured than those available on the WebUX server, the licenses of the first users logged on are used.

1.9.2 Communication: SSL certificate for HTTPS connections
To improve the security of your communication, WebUX only supports HTTPS connections.

You need a digital SSL certificate for the WebUX server.

You can find more information in the Microsoft Support under "How to Set Up an HTTPS Service in IIS":

- http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069

NOTICE
Protecting the infrastructure
Setting up a Web server may enable access to your plant infrastructure.

Therefore, protect the computer on which the Web server is installed. Make sure that the following rules are followed:

- The computer is only accessible via secure connections.
- The check mechanisms provided by software vendors are activated and cannot be bypassed under any circumstances.
Install a SSL certificate

You have the following options when setting up the WebUX website:

- Select an existing certificate
- Create self-signed certificates:
- Install a certificate after setting it up

Creating a new certificate

1. Activate the "Create a new certificate" option.
2. Enter a name of your choice.

When the configuration is completed, a self-signed certificate is created. The certificate is valid for one year.

Note

Restricted authentication

The certificates that you create when you configure the WebUX website itself are not verified by an official certification body. Depending on your browser settings, a warning message is displayed when you access the website.

To better secure the server authentication, install the certificate of an official certification body.

Display of secure data sources only

For display of websites and external files, one of the following conditions must be met:

- Call via the HTTPS connection
- Call of a trusted site

See also

http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069 (http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069)

1.9.3 Installation of WebUX

Software requirements

Certain requirements concerning operating system and software configuration must be met for the installation.
### WebUX server: Operating system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windows 10</td>
<td>Pro</td>
<td>Standard installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enterprise</td>
<td>64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Only a limited number of connections is possible. A maximum of three WebUX clients can connect to the WebUX server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 10</td>
<td>Enterprise LTSB (Long-Term Servicing Branch)</td>
<td>Standard installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Only a limited number of connections is possible. A maximum of three WebUX clients can connect to the WebUX server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2012 R2</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Datacenter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2016</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>64-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Datacenter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional software requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version / setting</th>
<th>Relevant for</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Web browser</td>
<td>WebUX client / terminal</td>
<td>WebUX can be used with any browser.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC version</td>
<td>WebUX server</td>
<td>The WebUX server is installed on a WinCC system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC Logon version (optional)</td>
<td>WebUX server</td>
<td>Only relevant if you are using SIMATIC Logon for central user administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User rights for installation</td>
<td>WebUX server</td>
<td>Required rights for installing the WebUX server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User rights for operation</td>
<td>WebUX client / WebUX server</td>
<td>Required rights on the WebUX server and WebUX client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS)</td>
<td>WebUX server</td>
<td>The WebUX server requires the Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS).  Enable the settings listed for the IIS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WebUX client (terminal)

You only need a HTML5-enabled Web browser such as Chrome, Firefox, Internet Explorer or Safari on a terminal that accesses the WebUX server.

Installation of the WebUX server

You can install WinCC/WebUX together with WinCC.

When you install the server WebUX at a later time, proceed as follows:

1. Start the WinCC installation DVD.
2. Select the installation type "Custom Installation".
3. In the "WinCC" group of the "Program" dialog, select the entry "WinCC WebUX".
4. Transfer the WebUX license. You can find additional information under:
   - WebUX licensing (Page 121)

After the installation and restarting the PC, the WinCC WebUX Configurator opens.

You can find information about configuring WebUX under:

- Configuring the WebUX website (Page 125)

See also

- WebUX licensing (Page 121)
- Configuring the WebUX website (Page 125)

1.9.4 Configuring the WebUX website

Configure the WebUX website on the WebUX server and the connection via HTTPS to communicate with the WebUX clients.

WinCC WebUX Configurator

After WinCC and WinCC/WebUX are installed, the WinCC WebUX Configurator opens.

To make changes later, you can find the WinCC WebUX Configurator in the "Siemens Automation" program group.

You use the WebUX Configurator to set up the standard configuration for the use of WebUX.

- Configuration of the Microsoft Internet Information Service
- Settings of the Web server
- SSL certificate for HTTPS connections
- Virtual folder

Read the information about digital certificates at:

- Communication: SSL certificate for HTTPS connections (Page 122)
Creating virtual folders

During the course of initial configuration, you specify whether you wish to create a new default website or a new virtual directory.

If you would like to set up the website as a virtual directory, at least one website with activated SSL encryption must be present on the PC. The websites that meet this criterion are shown in the "Select the higher level website" selection list.

Procedure: Use virtual folders

1. Configuration
   Select a higher-level website.
   The WebUX Configurator takes the port number and the SSL settings from the IIS settings.

2. Access from the terminal (WebUX client):
   To access the website, add the name of the virtual directory to the URL in the browser.

Requirement

- Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS) is installed.
- The WinCC basic system is installed.
- The "WinCC WebUX" program package is installed.
- The "WinCC WebUX" license is installed.

Procedure

After installing WinCC/WebUX and restarting the PC, the WinCC WebUX Configurator opens.

1. Click "Apply configuration".
   The standard configuration is set up.
   The "IIS configuration" dialog opens.

2. Enter a name for the website.

3. If you only operate the WebUX web page on the server, select the "Create a new website" option.
   If you work with virtual folders, proceed to step 6.

4. Enter the number of the port used for access in the "Port" field.
   The HTTPS standard port "443" is set by default.
   If you select a different port number, the address must be adapted on the WebUX client:
   When logging on to the terminal, this number is added into the browser address bar after the server name.

5. Select the settings for the digital certificate of the server.

6. If you set up the website as a virtual directory, select a higher level website.
   The WebUX Configurator takes the port number and the SSL settings from the IIS settings.

7. Confirm with "OK".

8. When the configuration has been set up, click "Exit".

9. Restart the computer.
Result

The WebUX server has been configured and the WebUX website set up.
The WinCC project must be activated in Runtime in order to access the WebUX server.

See also

Communication: SSL certificate for HTTPS connections (Page 122)
http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069 (http://support.microsoft.com/kb/324069)
1.10 Service and Support

1.10.1 Warnings

Safety information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you must observe to ensure your personal safety and to prevent damage to property. Notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol; notices referring to property damage only have no safety alert symbol. The warning notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DANGER</th>
<th>indicates that death or severe personal injury will result if proper precautions are not taken.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WARNING</td>
<td>indicates that death or severe personal injury may result if proper precautions are not taken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUTION</td>
<td>indicates that minor personal injury may result if proper precautions are not taken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTICE</td>
<td>indicates that property damage may result if proper precautions are not taken.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

indicates important information about the product and its use or a specific section of the documentation to which you should pay particular attention.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A warning notice of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by personnel qualified for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety information. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.
Proper use

Note the following:

**WARNING**

**Proper use of Siemens products**

Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be adhered to. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

---

**Trademarks**

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining names in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

**Security information**

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement - and continuously maintain - a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Siemens’ products and solutions only form one element of such a concept.

Customer is responsible to prevent unauthorized access to its plants, systems, machines and networks. Systems, machines and components should only be connected to the enterprise network or the internet if and to the extent necessary and with appropriate security measures (e.g. use of firewalls and network segmentation) in place.

Additionally, Siemens’ guidance on appropriate security measures should be taken into account. For more information about Industrial Security, please visit:

- https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity

Siemens’ products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends to apply product updates as soon as available and to always use the latest product versions. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply latest updates may increase customer’s exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Security RSS Feed under:

- https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity
Disclaimer of liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since discrepancies cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full agreement. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions. Suggestions for improvement are welcomed.

Information in the online documentation is more binding than that in the manuals and PDF files. Observe the Release Notes and Installation Notes. Information in the Release Notes and Installation Notes is more binding than that in the manuals and online help.

Copyright © Siemens AG 2018

All rights reserved

The reproduction, transmission or use of this document or its contents is not permitted without express written authorization. Offenders will be held liable for payment of damages. All rights, including rights created by patent grant or registration of a utility or design, are reserved.

Siemens AG
Division Digital Factory
SIMATIC Human Machine Interfaces
P.O. Box 4848
D-90026 Nuremberg, Germany

See also

https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity

1.10.2 Customer support

Customer Support, Technical Support

You can reach the SIMATIC hotlines at the times specified in the following table. The SIMATIC hotline employees speak German and English. The Authorization hotline offers French, Italian or Spanish customer support in addition to German and English.

Technical support

Nuremberg (GMT +1:00)
Service HoursMonday - Friday, 8:00 to 17:00 (CET/CEST)
Phone +49 911 895 7222
Fax +49 911 895 7223
Email https://support.industry.siemens.com/My/ww/en/requests

An overview of the Technical Support is available at the following URL:

Automation Value Card (AVC)
The Automation Value Card (AVC) gives you access to extended Technical Support, e.g. 24/7 accessibility. Information on the AVC can be found at the following URL:

SIMATIC Customer Online Support

Service and Support
An overview of the support offering for our products is available at the following URL:
- https://support.industry.siemens.com/

In Product Support, for example, you will find downloads of firmware updates, service packs and useful applications.

Online Help is available so that you can successfully use the Support offering. Open the Online Help using the button on the Internet page or using the following URL:

The app is available for mobile Siemens Support:
- https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/sc/2067

WinCC FAQs
WinCC Online Support with information on FAQs (Frequently Asked Questions) may also be found at the following URL:

Technical Forum
The Technical Forum supports exchange with other SIMATIC users. It is available at the following URL:
- https://support.industry.siemens.com/tf/
Technical documentation for SIMATIC products
You can find a guide to the technical documentation provided for individual SIMATIC products and systems at the following URL:

• http://www.siemens.com/simatic-tech-doku-portal

Local partners database
To contact your local partner, search our local partners database at the following URL:

• http://w3.siemens.com/aspa_app/

Product Information

SIMATIC WinCC
Go to the following URL for general information about WinCC:

• http://www.siemens.com/wincc

SIMATIC Products
Go to the following URL for general information about SIMATIC products:

• http://www.siemens.com/simatic

See also

Internet: Support Request
Internet: Technical support
Internet: Automation Validation Card (AVC)
Internet: Service and Support
Internet: SIMATIC WinCC in Online Support
Internet: Support Online Help
Internet: Mobile use via App
Internet: WinCC FAQs
Internet: Support Technical Forum
Internet: Technical documentation for SIMATIC products
Internet: Contact person database
Internet: Information about WinCC
Internet: SIMATIC Products

WinCC V7.5 Installation / Release Notes
1.10 Service and Support

WinCC: General information and installation
System Manual, 09/2018, A5E45518509-AA
1.10.3 Support request

Dear customer

In order to provide you with fast and effective support, please complete the "Support Request" form online on the Internet. Describe the problem in as much detail as possible. We would appreciate if you would provide us with all project data so that we can reproduce the error situation or shorten the turn-around time.

Before filling out the support request, check whether your configured quantity structure is within the range of tested quantity structures (see topic "Performance Data").

Support Request form

The Support Request form is available at the following URL:
- https://support.industry.siemens.com/my/WW/en/requests

When filling out the report, you will be guided through several steps. The data required by the Technical Support are described in the FAQ 16607894:

A detailed description of the Support Request can be found at the following URL:

Procedure

1. Open the "Support Request" form using the link on the Internet. Step 1 "Select product" is displayed:

2. Enter the project name in the "Product/Order number" box. Upper/lower case is not relevant. Search for parts of the product name or enter the full product name in the correct order. You can e. g. search for the following terms:
   - "WinCC Runtime V7"
   - "wincc editor"
   - "WinCC DataMonitor"
   - "wincc webnav"
   - "Connectivity"

The found products are offered in the "Product selection" field.
If you have questions about licensing, activate the "Problem with SIMATIC authorization/license" in the product selection field.

3. Select the desired product and click on "Next" to switch to step 2 "Select your situation". Select a use case.
4. Press "Next" to switch to step 3 "Our solutions". Suggested solutions and FAQs for the selected key words are listed. Once you have found a suggested solution for your problem, you can close the form in the browser. If you did not find any applicable suggested solutions, press "Next" to switch to step 4 "Describe a problem".


6. Describe your problem as exactly as possible in the "Details" field. Pay particular attention to the following questions and comments. Please also check the WinCC installation and configuration with regard to the following references.
   If you have any idea what has caused the error, please let us know. No detail should be omitted, even if you consider it unimportant.
   - Was the configuration data created with older WinCC versions?
   - How can the error be reproduced?
   - Are other programs running simultaneously with WinCC?
   - Have you deactivated the screen saver, virus checker and power management function?
   - Search your computer for log files (WinCC\Diagnose\*.log, drwatson.log, drwtsn32.log). The log files are needed for error analysis. Thus, be sure to send the log files as well.
   - To assemble diagnostic and system information from computers and other devices, use the "SIMATIC Assessment Suite - Data Collector" (SAS-DC) diagnostics tool. Additional information is available in the Support entry 65976201 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/65976201).

7. Use the "Search" button to upload your affected project and the log files (e. g. as a Zip file) to the Support Request. Press "Next" to switch to step 5 "Specify contact data".

8. Enter your contact information. Press "Next" to switch to step 6 "Summary & Send".

9. Press the "Print" button if you would like to print the support request. To receive a copy of your request as email, activate this option in the summary. You close the support request by clicking the "Send" button. Your data will be transmitted to Customer Support and processed there.

Thank you for your cooperation. We hope that we can be of assistance in solving your problems.

Your WinCC Team

See also


2.1 What is new in WinCC V7?

Introduction

The following chapters inform you in brief about the most important improvements in WinCC V7.5 over WinCC V7.4 SP1.

You can find detailed descriptions of the individual functions in the WinCC Information System.
2.2 Supported operating systems

Software requirements and supported operating systems

Microsoft SQL Server 2016 SP2
WinCC as of V7.5, requires Microsoft SQL Server 2016 Service Pack 2 (64-bit).
The SQL server is included in the scope of delivery of the product.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "WinCC Installation Notes > WinCC Installation Requirements > Microsoft SQL Server for WinCC (Page 24)"

Operating systems
WinCC as of V7.5 runs on the following operating systems:

- WinCC client projects
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Pro / Enterprise, 64-bit)
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Enterprise LTSB, 64-bit)

- For WebNavigator Clients and DataMonitor Clients
  - Windows 7 SP1 (Professional / Enterprise / Ultimate, 32-bit / 64-bit)
  - Windows 8.1 (Pro / Enterprise, 32-bit / 64-bit)
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Pro / Enterprise, 64-bit)
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Enterprise LTSB, 64-bit)

- For WinCC single-user projects and client projects
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Pro / Enterprise, 64-bit)
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Enterprise LTSB, 64-bit)
  - Windows Server 2016 (Standard / Datacenter 64-bit)
  - Windows Server 2012 R2 (Standard / Datacenter 64-bit)

- For WinCC Server
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Pro / Enterprise, 64-bit) ²)
  - Windows 10 ¹) (Enterprise LTSB, 64-bit) ²)
  - Windows Server 2016 (Standard / Datacenter 64-bit)
  - Windows Server 2012 R2 (Standard / Datacenter 64-bit)

1) The currently released build versions of Windows 10 are listed in the Compatibility Tool.
2) WinCC server with up to three WinCC clients

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "WinCC Installation Notes > Requirements for Installation of WinCC > Software requirements for the installation of WinCC (Page 19)"
2.3 Licensing

Upgrade licenses

The following upgrade licenses are available for upgrading to WinCC V7.5:

**WinCC Client**

Upgrade of a WinCC Runtime Client:
- Runtime Client Upgrade V7.2 / V7.3 -> V7.5
- Runtime Client Upgrade V7.4 -> V7.5

Upgrade of a WinCC Runtime & Configuration Client:
- Runtime & Configuration Client Upgrade V7.2 / V7.3 -> V7.5
- Runtime & Configuration Client Upgrade V7.4 -> V7.5

**WinCC server / single-user system**

Upgrade WinCC Runtime 1):
- Runtime Client Upgrade V7.2 / V7.3 -> V7.5
- Runtime Client Upgrade V7.4 -> V7.5

Upgrade WinCC Runtime & Configuration 1):
- Runtime & Configuration Upgrade V7.2 / V7.3 -> V7.5
- Runtime & Configuration Upgrade V7.4 -> V7.5

**Remarks**

1) Also contains the upgrades for the following products:
- WinCC User Archives
- WinCC Server
- WinCC Redundancy
- WinCC WebUX
- WinCC WebNavigator 2)
- WinCC WebDiag Client
- WinCC Load Balancing
- WinCC Load Balancing step-up
- WinCC DataMonitor 2)
- WinCC Connectivity Pack
- WinCC Connectivity Station

2) Licenses for 5 / 25 / 50 / 150 clients from versions up to V7.3 are retained.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Licensing (Page 232)"
2.4 Improvements in the performance and efficient configuration

WinCC Runtime performance

WinCC V7.5 supports the management of large amounts of data in Runtime.

Updated example configurations and typical values are available in the WinCC Information System: "Performance data > Archive system (Page 251)"

Performance improvement for faceplate instances

Dynamize your faceplate types with the new, high-performance interface tags or with the WinCC structure tags.

Performance tags for system analysis

The "Performance" tag group in WinCC Tag Management contains the system tags that offer important indicators for data processing in Runtime, archiving and the status of the communication channels.

Examples:
- Tag Management: Written or read tags since activation of Runtime
- Archive system: Average number of archived tags/second
- Communication channels: Bytes written or read/second

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Working with Projects System Diagnostics with Performance Tags"

Configuration: WinCC Configuration Studio

The following editors have been integrated additionally into the Configuration Studio so that these components can also be conveniently configured in clearly structured tables:

- Menus and toolbars
- Text and graphic lists
- Picture Tree
- WinCC Tag Simulator

The handling of the WinCC Configuration Studio has also been further improved.

Among other things, you can use extended filter options and filter only by the highest level in hierarchical tables, for example.

You can find the full function description in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Working with Projects > The WinCC Configuration Studio"

Configuration "Animation" type of dynamics

If you want to dynamize several properties of an object with the same tag or the same event, WinCC offers the new "Animation" type of dynamics.

You select the tag and the data type once, and then specify the respective behavior of the desired object properties.
Animation offers an advantage as compared to dynamization via scripts, also with Runtime performance.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures > Working with Objects > Dynamic Basic Operations > Animating an Object"

**Configuration Structure tags in faceplate types**

One of the new options provided by WinCC V7.5 is the simplified configuration of many faceplate instances.

Link the WinCC structure type elements with the object properties of the faceplate types.

To insert the faceplate instances drag only the configured structure type instances into the process picture. During insertion the instance-specific structure type elements are automatically linked with the structure tags.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures > Working with Faceplate Types"

**Configuration recommendations**

A new chapter of the WinCC Information System summarizes tips and recommendations for efficient and high-performance configuration.

Notes on optimum dynamization of process pictures in particular can be found in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Dynamize process pictures > Configuration recommendations".

**See also**

*Extended functionality for communication and interfaces* (Page 143)
2.5 Function extensions in case of safe operation of the plant

IT security

The following standards for increased security in communication apply to new installations of WinCC 7.5 and upgrades to version 7.5:

- "Remote communication" is disabled by default in the communication settings. If you use a redundant system or a client-server system, for example, activate the remote communication. "Encrypted communication" is hereby enabled automatically.
- Write access for a released WinCC project folder is blocked by default.
- Only encrypted communication is permissible for WebUX and the Cloud Connector.

Network address of redundant systems

The network address for a redundant system is assigned either dynamically or statically in WinCC 7.5. You change the network address by opening the "Redundancy" editor in WinCC Explorer and assigning the network address of the redundant partner in the "General" tab.

Confirm operation with electronic signature

You can use an electronic signature to make the execution of critical operations dependent on the electronic signature of a user.

A given action is only carried out when the configured user is authenticated with a password. If the user is not authorized or enters an incorrect password, the action is not performed.

Extended functions for the electronic signature with WinCC/Audit V7.5

You require WinCC/Audit to use the full scope of the electronic signature. You can then have operations signed retroactively or define the dual control principle: Multiple defined users need to confirm the operation with their electronic signature before the action is executed.

Additional information in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Structure of the User Administration > Configuring Electronic Signatures"
2.6 Extended functionality for communication and interfaces

New functions support stable communication in your plant, for example, diagnostics via performance tags and tags for connection setup/termination.

WinCC V7.5 also offers additional function extensions:

- **WinCC OPC UA server:**
  - Write protection / read protection of tags
- **OPC UA WinCC Channel:**
  - Integration into the tag management of the WinCC Configuration Studio
  - Extended by alarms and events
  - Extended by structures
- **Mitsubishi Ethernet:**
  - New channel unit "Mitsubishi iQ-R series"
- **Allen Bradley - Ethernet IP:**
  - Communication connections via routing

**System diagnostics with performance tags**

The "Performance" tag group in WinCC Tag Management contains system tags that offer important indicators for data processing and the status of the communication channels in Runtime.

Examples:

- Bytes written or read/second
- Written or read tags since activation of Runtime

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Communication > Communication Diagnostics > Channel Diagnostics > Check connection with performance tags"

**Connection status in Runtime**

WinCC provides you with the option of establishing or terminating channel connections during operation and determining the current status.

To do so use the system tags of the tag group "ConnectionStates":

- @<Connectionname>@ForceConnectionStateEx
- @<Connectionname>@ConnectionStateEx
As of WinCC V7.5, this function is available for all communication channels that are supported as of WinCC V7.5:

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Communication > Process Communication > WinCC Process Communication > Configuring tags for the connection state in Runtime"

WinCC OPC UA server

The WinCC OPC UA server supports write protection and read protection of tags when accessed by clients. Read-protected tags are not displayed in WinCC Tag Management.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Interfaces > OPC - Open Connectivity > WinCC OPC UA Server > Name space of the WinCC OPC UA Server"

Communication channel: OPC UA WinCC Channel

Extended functions

As of WinCC V7.5 the OPC UA WinCC Channel also supports access to OPC-UA object types as well as to alarms and events of the Event Notifier.

With this, you can integrate OPC UA alarms in the WinCC message system, monitor them centrally and archive them.

Configuration

The configuration of the OPC UA WinCC Channel is completely integrated into the WinCC Configuration Studio.
As of WinCC V7.5 you work in the following editors:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPC UA Server</th>
<th>WinCC editor</th>
<th>Linked WinCC objects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OPC UA nodes</td>
<td>Tag Management</td>
<td>Process tags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPC UA object types</td>
<td>Tag Management</td>
<td>Structure types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPC UA objects</td>
<td>Tag Management</td>
<td>Structure tags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Notifier: Alarms and events</td>
<td>Alarm Logging</td>
<td>Messages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Communication > OPC UA WinCC Channel > Configuration of the OPC UA channel"

**Communication channel: Mitsubishi Ethernet**

The "Mitsubishi iQ-R series" channel unit has been extended for the "Mitsubishi Ethernet" WinCC channel.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Communication > Mitsubishi Ethernet"

**Communication channel: Allen Bradley - Ethernet IP**

As of WinCC V7.5, the WinCC channel "Allen Bradley - Ethernet IP" supports connections via routing.

You can also configure a connection with a PLC that is located in other Allen-Bradley racks.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Communication > Allen Bradley - Ethernet IP > Configuration of the channel > Examples: Communication path"

**See also**

[Improvements in the performance and efficient configuration](Page 140)
2.7 Advanced functionality when working with process pictures

Folder structures for PDLs

In the Graphic Designer, you now have the option to sort your process pictures in folder structures. The PDL files can be moved via drag-and-drop.

Process picture view: Hiding system pictures

All pictures and faceplate types of the WinCC project are displayed in the "Process pictures" window:

You open the required picture with a double-click and create a picture window or a faceplate instance via drag-and-drop.

Use the file filter to search for a specific picture. In addition, you can hide system pictures or pictures with specific prefixes in this view.

You can find additional information in the WinCC Information System under "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures":

- "Elements and basic settings of the Graphics Designer > The start screen of the Graphics Designer > Process Pictures"
- "Elements and basic settings of the Graphics Designer > The basic settings of the Graphics Designer > How to set the options in Graphics Designer"

New editor "Menus and toolbars"

The editor used previously for creating and editing menus and toolbars for the process pictures has been replaced by the WinCC Configuration Studio.

Additional information in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures > Process Pictures in Runtime > Menus and toolbars"
Actions for the "Close Picture" event

As of WinCC V7.5, you have the option of defining an action for the "Close Picture" event also. The Close Picture event occurs as soon as the process picture in Runtime is closed, for example when changing pictures.

Disabling gesture control

In the project settings, you have the option of disabling the swipe gestures (left/right/down) in a targeted manner.
2.8 WinCC Graphics Designer: Extensions for graphic objects and libraries

New SVG library with extended functions

WinCC V7.5 offers a new library with dynamizable SVG objects. This provides a more convenient possibility to change the display depending on your process values.

Graphic object "I/O Field"

It is now possible to use the local time for input and output of the data format Date/Time. If the devices with a WinCC Runtime are in different time zones, you have the option to select which time should be displayed in the I/O field:

- **Date/Time**: The contents of the tag are output. Differences in the time zone and daylight-saving time are not taken into consideration.
- **Date/Time (local)**: The local time is output. UTC is converted to the local time zone of the respective client or server.

For the input, make sure that you use the local time for Date/Time (local). The local time is automatically converted to UTC on output.

Graphic objects "Check Box" / "Option Group"

The number of configurable boxes has been increased: You can now define up to 64 boxes with the object property "Number of Boxes" (BoxCount).

DataSet object

The DataSet object serves as a container for the internal storage of data of the user objects or faceplate types. The object does not have a graphical user interface in Runtime. You can link tags or configure events in the properties of the DataSet object.
2.9 WinCC Graphics Designer: Extended functions for the configuration

New "Animation" type of dynamics

You can make the display of an object in Runtime dynamic even more simply with WinCC V7.5:

Use the new, high-performance dynamization type "Animation" instead of editing individual object properties or using addressing via scripts.

You select the desired triggers, e.g. a tag value, and the object properties affected by this in a single window. You define the corresponding change to the selected properties for the respective value ranges.

You can also include the evaluation of the quality code in the animation.

Additional information in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures > Working with Objects > Dynamic Basic Operations > Animating an Object"

New editor "Menus and toolbars"

The editor used previously for creating and editing menus and toolbars for the process pictures has been replaced by the WinCC Configuration Studio.

Additional information in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures > Process Pictures in Runtime > Menus and toolbars"

Central, multilingual text configuration

The new property window "Texts" contains the text properties of all objects in the process picture.

In this overview, you edit the texts in all Runtime languages and define the desired text formats and fonts.

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures > Working with Objects > Properties of an Object > The "Object Properties" Window > The "Texts" Tab in the "Object Properties" Window"

Special characters and new fonts

The expanded character table supports you in editing texts and inserting special characters.

In the object properties, you will find a new icon in all text boxes for calling the character table: 📅

WinCC V7.5 supports additional fonts e.g. "FontAwesome". Use the new special characters and icons to, for example, label a button with language-neutral, unambiguous symbols.
What's new in WinCC V7?

2.9 WinCC Graphics Designer: Extended functions for the configuration

You can also use the new fonts in the WinCC options WinCC/WebNavigator and WinCC/WebUX.

You can find additional information in the WinCC Information System under "Working with WinCC > Creating Process Pictures":

- "Working with WinCC > Properties of an Object > The "Object Properties" Window > How to edit an attribute"
- "Elements and basic settings of the Graphics Designer > The start screen of the Graphics Designer > Font palette"

New designs

With WinCC 7.5, the new designs "WinCC Retro" and "WinCC Ocean" are available to you.

- WinCC Ocean offers a dark design in blue-green color tones with its own central color palette.
- WinCC Retro imitates the appearance of "WinCC Classic". The functionality corresponds to the other WinCC designs in WinCC V7 or higher.

The color palette is now part of the global design and can be switched accordingly.
The color of the monitor keyboard is now also part of the design settings and can be adapted accordingly.

**Pipette function for color selection**

To apply a color from a screen object, you can use the color pipette in WinCC 7.5.

**Colors: Tooltip display**

You can either define the colors directly in the "Color selection" dialog or select indexed colors from a central color palette if a central color palette is defined.

As of WinCC 7.5, the name of a configured color is displayed in the properties dialog as a tooltip.
2.10 Extended functionality in Tag Management and Tag Logging

Structured data types with faceplate link

With WinCC 7.5, you can use structured data types together with faceplates. You can use a structured data type directly for the faceplate, without having to access the individual data types.

WinCC tag simulator

The WinCC tag simulator has been adapted to the WinCC Configuration Studio for version 7.5. It is now also possible in the new tag simulator to individually adapt the simulation of tags via scripts.
Extended functionality in the message system

Hiding messages

Hiding messages reduces the information load for the system user. You as user can concentrate better on the relevant messages if only selected messages are shown.

You have the following options to hide messages:

• Automatic hide: Messages are hidden and shown again later depending on a specific system state.
• Manual hide: In the message window, you can use a button to define when you want to hide a message from one of the three message lists.

You can manually unhide messages that have been hidden manually or automatically.

User-defined selection in message window

You can configure one fixed selection and several user-defined selections in WinCC 7.5:

• The “fixed selection” is always used in the message list in Runtime. The fixed selection applies only to the configured AlarmControl.
• A user-defined selection is only used in Runtime if the selection is enabled. The user-defined selections are created project-wide and can be selected for all AlarmControls.

When you create a user-defined selection, you can specify the authorizations required for editing the selection. This selection can only be changed or deleted in Runtime by authorized users with the corresponding authorization level.

Automatic update of the controller messages

When you enable the "Automatic update" option in Alarm Logging, the AS messages are displayed in Runtime with the current properties after message changes. The suitable message class in WinCC is selected in the Alarm Logging based on the ID of the controller message class.
2.12 Extended functionality with options for Process Control

Horn: Extended text configuration
As user text block, you can transfer the text of an existing user text block from the Text Library.
In WinCC 7.5, you can enter the text ID from the Text Library in the first row. The existing languages of the Text Library are displayed when you exit the field.

Status display of the connected servers also available on OS Server
The status of all loaded redundant server pairs and non-redundant servers is displayed in the right-hand section of the area overview for the entire plant. If packages are loaded on the client, a colored button representing the state of the connected servers appears in the area overview. If you click this button, a window listing all connected servers opens in the working area.
In WinCC 7.5, the function can be used for OS servers as well as for OS clients.

Showing the name of the operator station in the overview area
You can show the current computer names in the overview area in WinCC 7.5. With the "Display name of the operator station" option, the name is displayed in the overview area above the user name. The placement depends on the selected layout.

New process control messages on the status of Batch and RC servers
WinCC 7.5 offers the following new process control messages:

- 1012323 Inconsistent settings for Maintenance Station detected
- 1012324 Status FAULT (@2%s@)
- 1012325 Status FAULT POSTPONED (@2%s@)
For @2%s@, the affected application is output.
2.13 Extended functionality for WinCC/WebUX

Graphic objects

SVG objects and SVG library
WebUX supports the SVG object as well as objects of the SVG library as of version "IndustryGraphicsLibraryV2".
Dynamizations of SVG library objects are also supported in WebUX Runtime.

WinCC OnlineTrendControl
The dynamized trend display in the WinCC OnlineTrendControl can now also be used in WebUX Runtime.

Central color palette
You can also use the central color palette in process pictures that are displayed with WebUX.
With this, you can display all color properties configured with the central color palette in WebUX in the WinCC AlarmControl also.

"FontAwesome" and "Siemens Sans" fonts
The WebUX client always loads the "FontAwesome" and "Siemens Sans" fonts from the WebUX server.
All other fonts must each be available on the WebUX client.
Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Options > WinCC/WebUX - Documentation > Functions supported in WebUX"

Automatic login for all users
As of WinCC/WebUX V7.5 automatic login is extended.
When logging into WebUX you can have the user name and password saved for the following users:

- Monitor user role
  Users with the authorization level 1002 "Web access - monitoring only"
- Operator user role
  Users who are authorized to control the WebUX project

Further information is available in the WinCC Information System: "Options > WinCC/WebUX - Documentation > Configure a WinCC project for WebUX"
2.14 Other Innovations

Support of the RPTJobPrint script function in the Web client

For printing within the WebNavigator client, you can start the print job with the "RPTJobPrint" function in WinCC 7.5. A preview via "RPTJobPreview" is not possible on the Web client.

VBS: New property "Comment"

Via the comment property, you can read out the comment of an alarm object or a tag in VBS.

Redundant servers in different subnets

The network address of the redundant server can be assigned statically or dynamically in WinCC 7.5. The partner server can be located in a different subnet.

WinCC/Cloud Connector

As of WinCC V7.5, you can connect your plant with a cloud.

You determine which values should be transferred to your cloud application.

With the MQTT (Message Queue Telemetry Transport) protocol, WinCC V7.5 supports the cloud of Amazon AWS and Microsoft Azure.

Additional information in the WinCC Information System: "SmartTools > WinCC/Cloud Connector"
3.1 WinCC Documentation

WinCC Online Information

WinCC assists you in your tasks by providing a wide range of comprehensive information and data.

Depending on the actual situation and needs, you can access background information, call up handling instructions, study examples or refer to summary instructions regarding a single operating element.

WinCC offers the following support for configuration tasks:

- Tooltips
- Notes in the status bar
- Direct Help
- WinCC Information System with detailed documentation
- PDF files
- Web-based Help via "My Documentation Manager"

For Runtime operation, WinCC provides assistance in the form of "What's This?" help. Additional information can be accessed via a link from the "What's This?" help to the WinCC Information System.

Customized information for the user can be stored in the project. Users also have the option to configure additional help.

See also

- Tooltips and Status Bar (Page 158)
- Direct Help ("What's This?") in WinCC (Page 159)
- WinCC Information System (Page 161)
- Navigation in the WinCC Information System (Page 164)
- Search in WinCC Information System (Page 167)
3.2 Tooltips and Status Bar

Information on Menu Commands and Buttons

After positioning the mouse pointer on a menu command or a button, a Tooltip on the corresponding element is displayed, providing a brief explanation of its features. Simultaneously, a brief description of the function appears in the status bar.

Information in the Status Bar

The status bar is the bar at the bottom of the WinCC window. It contains general and editor-specific information. General information relates, for example, to the keyboard settings and the current editing language. Editor-specific information includes information on the position and size of a selected object in the Layout Editor.

The status bar is also used to display information on menu commands and the buttons in the toolbars.

See also

WinCC Documentation (Page 157)
Direct Help ("What's This?") in WinCC (Page 159)
WinCC Information System (Page 161)
Navigation in the WinCC Information System (Page 164)
Search in WinCC Information System (Page 167)
3.3 Direct Help ("What's This?") in WinCC

Direct Help ("What's This?") in WinCC

The "What's This?" help contains information on the buttons, icons, fields, windows and dialogs in WinCC.

A tooltip window opens after you call the Direct Help. From this window, you may request additional help from the WinCC Information System via links.

Show complete text

A standard size for the tooltip window is defined for each component.

Long texts may not be shown in full in the open window.

To read the full text, click the window and drag it with the mouse, or scroll down or to the right with the arrow keys.

Call up Using F1

During configuration, you call up "What's This?" help by using the function key <F1>.

After selecting an element in a window or dialog, call up "What's This?" help on the element by pressing <F1>. The operable elements in a window can be selected by pressing the <TAB> key.

Call up Using a Button

Call up the "What's This?" help using one of the following buttons:

- in the WinCC toolbar, in order to obtain help on buttons, icons and windows of WinCC
- in the title bar of an open dialog, in order to obtain help on the dialog

The mouse pointer takes the form of a question mark. After clicking an element with the question mark, the "What's This?" help opens.

The links provided in the "What's This?" help enable you to access the WinCC Information System. It contains further information, step-by-step instructions and examples.

Accessing the WinCC Information System

If further help is requested from the "What's This?" help, a window opens containing the WinCC Information System.

You are directed to the chapter containing information related to your "What's This" query.

The title of the superordinated chapter appears in the window header.

If another link to the WinCC Information System is selected from the "What's This?" help, a second window is opened.

Close the windows that are not currently required. This helps limiting the number of open windows.
3.3 Direct Help ("What’s This?") in WinCC

See also

- Tooltips and Status Bar (Page 158)
- WinCC Documentation (Page 157)
- WinCC Information System (Page 161)
- Navigation in the WinCC Information System (Page 164)
- Search in WinCC Information System (Page 167)
3.4 WinCC Information System

Contents of the WinCC Information System

The WinCC Information System enables you to access the entire WinCC documentation at any time during configuration. It contains the following components:

- Complete documentation on WinCC
- Documentation on installed optional packs, add-ons and drivers
- Printable PDF version of the WinCC documentation
- Release notes with important up-to-date information on WinCC

Calling up the WinCC Information System

Menu command “?” > “Help Topics”

The “Contents” tab contains the graphic table of contents of the online documentation. It lists all available topics sorted by category.

Using the entry “Start Page”, you can call up the WinCC Portal. It provides links to the most important topics in the WinCC Information System.

From "What's This?" help

A topic can be accessed directly from the related WinCC "What's This?" help.

From Windows Explorer

In the "Siemens" program group, select the entry "Documentation" and then the folder "Manuals".

A folder that contains a link to the respective WinCC Information System exists for each installation language.

Structure of the WinCC Information System

The WinCC Information System is divided into two panels: The navigation panel on the left features a number of tabs for different access and search options.

The topic panel on the right displays the individual help topics.

External window

Some help topics are not directly accessible in WinCC Information System.

When you click a grey button on a page, a second window is opened with the respective contents. This window provides information on how to use the "Contents", "Index" and "Search" tabs.

Use the ">>" and "<<" buttons to scroll to the next or previous page.

Click the "Global Search" button to return to the WinCC Information System.
**Color coding in the section headings in online help**

Section headings in online help are colored.

The color code indicates the type of information provided in the related text. Sections of the same information type have the same color.

The following table shows the different color codes used to identify the information types in online help.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basics and background information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dropdown texts**

Some pages of the online help features headings underlined in blue. Click these headings to call up drop-down texts.

The additional information consists of text, tables, etc.

To hide the drop-down text, click it again.

The following notation is used in the online help:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expandable text</strong></td>
<td>Heading with this form indicate expandable text in the online help.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the menu commands “Tools > Open” or “Close” to open or close all drop-down texts of a page at once.
Print versions of the WinCC Information System

The help provided in the WinCC Information System can also be printed:

1. In the "Siemens" program group, select the entry "Documentation".
   The WinCC "Siemens\Documentation" installation path is opened in the Windows Explorer.
2. Select the path "Siemens\WinCC\Documents".
   A folder has been created for each installation language.
3. Open the desired PDF file in the language folder.
   The main sections of the WinCC Information System are summarized in PDF files with the title "WinCC_<Title>_<_LanguageIdentification>.pdf.

PDF reader

To open the printable files, you need Adobe Acrobat Reader.

You can download the Adobe Acrobat Reader free of charge from the following URL:


See also

- Tooltips and Status Bar (Page 158)
- Documentation in the Internet (Page 169)
3.5 Navigation in the WinCC Information System

WinCC Portal

The start page contains the WinCC Portal links, providing an overview of the WinCC Information System.

Apart from the chapters of the WinCC Information System, you can also find links to Service and Support in the lower part of the page.

You can also easily enter the main chapter of WinCC Information by using the portal pages as the Homepage.

Navigation Area Tabs

The left panel of the Online Help contains the navigation section. The tabs allow you to search and access help in different ways:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tab</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Contents&quot;</td>
<td>Contains a hierarchical overview of all help topics that can be accessed directly from here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Index&quot;</td>
<td>The index terms can be used as a basis for searching for help topics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Find&quot;</td>
<td>Enter a search term for full text search of the entire documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Favorites&quot;</td>
<td>If this tab is displayed, you can store topics that you need frequently here. These topics can then be called up without having to search for them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Navigation using Header Buttons

The buttons in the header provide the following access options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hide</td>
<td>Click this button to hide the navigation section with the &quot;Contents&quot;, &quot;Index&quot; and &quot;Search&quot; tabs. The information system then requires less space on the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show</td>
<td>If the navigation panel is hidden, it can be unhidden again clicking this button. If the navigation panel is hidden, the table of contents displayed is not updated following a topic change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back</td>
<td>Click this button to return to the previous page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forward</td>
<td>Click this button to go to the next page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Navigation on the "Contents" Tab

The "Contents" tab contains the table of contents of the WinCC Information System:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>⌊</td>
<td>Click this button to display the subordinate hierarchy levels of a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📖</td>
<td>Double click this button to simultaneously open a help topic and display the subordinate hierarchy levels. Click this button to open the help topic on its own, without displaying the subordinate hierarchy levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📖</td>
<td>Double click one of these buttons to open a help topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📖</td>
<td>Double click one of these buttons to open an instruction for action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📖</td>
<td>Double click one of these buttons to open an example.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shortcut menu in the table of contents

You can open all the hierarchical levels in the table of contents at the click of a mouse via the shortcut menu with "Open all". Select "Close all" to close all the hierarchical levels again.

Navigation on a Help Page

There is an additional menu bar above the title of a page. Move the mouse pointer over a menu item to call up the related list. Use the mouse to select the topic you wish to call up.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In Section</td>
<td>Go to a specific topic within the page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instructions</td>
<td>Provides links to step-by-step instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples</td>
<td>Provides links to application examples and sample cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basics</td>
<td>Provides links to additional information, e.g. definitions or details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properties</td>
<td>Provides links to information on the properties of objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>Provides links to information on methods that are applied to objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Provides links to information on events that are applied to objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objects</td>
<td>Provides links to information on related objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>Offers links to topics opened earlier. A maximum of ten topics are saved in the History.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools &gt; Open</td>
<td>Opens all closed dropdown texts and dropdown images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools &gt; Close</td>
<td>Closes all open dropdown texts and dropdown images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools &gt; Start</td>
<td>Jumps back to the first page opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools &gt; Previous / Next</td>
<td>Navigates back and forward between the topics opened earlier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Links

For some topics, there are links provided directly on the help page.
Navigation Using the Keyboard

The navigation options available for the mouse can also be operated using the keyboard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;ALT+RIGHT&gt;</td>
<td>Go to next page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;ALT+LEFT&gt;</td>
<td>Go to previous page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;LEFT&gt;</td>
<td>Move the scroll bar in the active window to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;RIGHT&gt;</td>
<td>Move scroll bar in the active window to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;UP&gt;</td>
<td>Move scroll bar in the active window upwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;DOWN&gt;</td>
<td>Move scroll bar in the active window downwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;CTRL+TAB&gt;</td>
<td>Switch between the tabs (&quot;Contents&quot;, &quot;Index&quot;, &quot;Search&quot; and &quot;Favorites&quot;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;ENTER&gt;</td>
<td>Display a topic selected on a tab in the navigation panel. Trigger the function of the button previously selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;F6&gt;</td>
<td>Toggle between navigation and topic panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;TAB&gt;</td>
<td>Switch between the buttons in the topic area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

WinCC Documentation (Page 157)
Tooltips and Status Bar (Page 158)
Direct Help ("What’s This?") in WinCC (Page 159)
WinCC Information System (Page 161)
Search in WinCC Information System (Page 167)
3.6 Search in WinCC Information System

Full Text Search on the "Search" Tab

The "Search" tab enables you to search for a particular topic in a highly efficient manner.

Expanded Search

If the precise spelling of a term is not known or if you wish to search for all words containing the entered character string use the asterisk * as a wildcard. The asterisk stands thereby for any number of characters.

- Example: Using search term "*messages" the following words are found: "Messages", "System operator input messages", "Process controlling messages", "Process messages" etc.

Quotation Marks

Use quotation marks to search for phrases.

- Example: "Configuring graphics"

Boolean Operators

The arrow beside the input field can be used to logically link the search term with AND, OR, NEAR and NOT.

- Example: "Configuring" AND "graphics"

Match Similar Words

After clicking the "Match Similar Words" check box, a search is made for terms with a similar spelling. Special characters, such as umlauts, etc. are searched for as special characters in an ungrouped form.

Search Titles Only

After activating the "Search Titles Only" check box, a search is made only in the headings of the individual pages.

Search Previous Results

If the "Search Previous Results" check box is activated following a search, only pages found previously are searched for the new term. This of course limits the search and makes it more targeted.

Ensure that the check boxes are cleared prior to the next search where you wish to include all contents.
3.6 Search in WinCC Information System

Sorting Search Results
To sort the search results alphabetically, click "Title" or "Location" button at the top of the list. In the "Location" column, you can see the help topic in which the respective page is included.

Storing Search Terms
The last search terms entered are stored in the list and can be called in again.

Displaying Search Results
After clicking on a topic in the navigation panel, the corresponding page is displayed. The search term is highlighted on the page.

If the search term is only part of a word, it is possible that the term is not marked. Use the key combination <CTRL+F> to activate the search within the page.

See also
- WinCC Documentation (Page 157)
- Tooltips and Status Bar (Page 158)
- Direct Help ("What's This?") in WinCC (Page 159)
- WinCC Information System (Page 161)
- Navigation in the WinCC Information System (Page 164)
3.7 Documentation in the Internet

Overview

You can search for WinCC documentation in the Internet.

The search results will be displayed in "My Documentation Manager". There, you compile your own documents which you can then output in the formats PDF, RTF or XML.

Searching for WinCC Help topics in the Internet

2. Select "Manual" as the entry type in the filter settings.
3. If required, enter additional key words and click the magnifier icon.
4. Click one of the results, e.g. "WinCC V7.5: Working with WinCC". The drop-down list on the right can be used to sort the results list.
5. Click on the link "Displaying and configuring" in the open page. The page "My Documentation Manager" opens and the topics of the manual will be displayed. Alternatively, you can open and save the manual as a PDF file via "Download".

Direct call of "My Documentation Manager"

If you have already displayed or compiled documents in "My Documentation Manager", use My Documentation Manager (https://support.industry.siemens.com/My/ww/en/documentation) to directly open these compilations.

On the start page you will find a detailed description of the functions and operation of "My Documentation Manager".

Registration

If you want to use all the functions without any restrictions, you have to register for "My Documentation Manager".

The registration link can be found at the top right in "My Documentation Manager".

After registration, you can download the PDF version of the manual via "My Library".

Searching for Help topics in "My Documentation Manager"

In "My Documentation Manager" you can restrict the search within a manual to a specific topic type, such as action or example.

1. Go to the "Search" tab.
2. Enter a search term, for example, "WinCC message system".
3. Select the type of help page as the topic type, for example, "Action".
4. Click "Search". The search results are displayed below.
5. Click on one of the search results.
The topic of the WinCC Information System is displayed on the right.

6. If you click on the "Last visited" tab, you will see the topic embedded in the structure of the manual.

7. You can also search for search terms using the index.
   Right-click on one of the chapters of the manual.
   The index of the document is displayed via the "Show index" menu.

### Compiling Online Help documents for more processing

If you want to print parts of the Online Help or reuse them in other programs, you have to collect and generate the documents in a library.

You must have registered and be logged in.

You can read how to create a generated document, as a PDF, for example, in the description of "My Documentation Manager".

The generated document can then be saved in a freely selectable location.

### Language support in "My Documentation Manager"

The majority of WinCC documents are available in all languages supported by WinCC.

To set the language for a document in "My Documentation Manager", right-click on the title of the document.

Select the required language.

### See also

- [WinCC Information System](#) (Page 161)
- [My Documentation Manager](https://support.industry.siemens.com/My/ww/en/documentation)
- [support.automation.siemens.com](http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10805583/133000)
4.1 Introduction

Introduction

This section contains information on the migration of WinCC projects created in WinCC V6.2 SP3 or higher.

When you open a project of a previous version with the current WinCC version, you are prompted to migrate the project. However, you may also use WinCC Project Migrator to migrate several WinCC projects in a single step.

Prior to migration, it is recommended to make a backup copy of the original version of the project. For more information on this, refer to the "Working with WinCC" > "Working with projects" > "Copying and duplicating projects" section in the WinCC Information System.

Note

Upgrading of versions < V7.2

We know from experience that some customer projects cannot be upgraded with version jumps.

If appropriate, migrate from version to version: V6 > V7.0 > V7.2 > V7.5

Additional information on migration of WinCC versions V4 or higher is available under the following URL (entry ID=44029132):


Multi-user Projects

When you are working with a multi-user project that was created in the previous version, migrate the individual multi-user projects from all servers in the system.
Redundant Systems in Normal Operation

A project can be upgraded in a redundant system without deactivating operation. This requires that you update the server, clients with their own project and clients without their own project in a certain sequence. Detailed instructions are provided in the section "Upgrading Redundant Systems in Normal Operation".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Migrating redundant systems without extended interruption</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In order not to affect system operation, it is essential to observe the sequence of steps described and to complete all the steps without any long interruptions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A client may always only be connected to one server, on which the same WinCC version is installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Behavior during migration of ServiceMode projects

At the start of migration, the Migrator checks whether or not the project on hand is a ServiceMode project. The following is also verified if it is a ServiceMode project:

- If a service user has been entered
- If the service user is available
- If the service user is a member of the "SIMATIC HMI" group
- If the service user is able to log on

An error message is output and the migration process is aborted if one of these criteria is not met.

The central archive server WinCC/CAS is migrated to Process Historian

In WinCC V7.2 and higher, the data of the WinCC/CAS is migrated to SIMATIC Process Historian. Observe the migration description in the Process Historian documentation.

Migration of chip cards when using the "Chip card reader" option

With WinCC V7.3 and later, the user information on the smart card is saved with an improved hash function for passwords. After upgrading, you must re-assign the passwords for all WinCC users in all projects, which means server projects and clients projects. This means that you have to write all chip cards in use once again with the corresponding users in the User Administrator. Afterwards, only the new user information specified as of WinCC V7.3 exists in the projects and on the chip cards.

Converting project data

You may also import selected project data and files from projects created in a previous version for use in a new WinCC project.
To do this, you need to adapt pictures and script files, for example, to the current version of WinCC and convert them to the current format.

- It is not possible to convert an individual picture or library object.
- System screens that you have set as invisible in the computer properties in the "Graphics Runtime" tab are not converted.

**NOTICE**

Conversion is irrevocable

Conversion of data cannot be undone.

The conversion starts immediately, as soon as you confirmed the dialog with "OK".

**Note**

Conversion of pictures and libraries may take some time.

**Procedure**

1. Select the "Tools > Convert project data" menu command in WinCC Explorer.
2. Select the project data to be converted:
   - Pictures and faceplates
   - Global libraries
   - Project libraries
   - Page layouts and line layouts
   - C and VB project functions and actions
   - C and VB standard functions
   - Data for Basic Process Control
3. Select the configuration language of the WinCC project from which the project data originated.
4. Confirm with "OK".

The selected data is converted to the current version of WinCC.

**WinCC projects that were created with versions prior to WinCC V7.0**

*Migration*

4.1 Introduction

WinCC: General information and installation

System Manual, 09/2018, A5E45518509-AA

WinCC projects that were created with versions prior to WinCC V7.0

**Migrated WinCC projects with SQL Server 2000 databases**

WinCC projects that were created with versions prior to WinCC V6.2 SP2 include database settings of the SQL Server 2000.

To access these databases with WinCC V7.4 and higher, you must adapt the compatibility settings.
For additional information, refer to "How to migrate SQL Server 2000 databases (Page 179)".

**Note**

No migration of a WinCC V6.2 SP3 project if a WinCC editor has never been opened before

If you have never opened an editor, for example, Alarm Logging or Text Library, in a WinCC V6.2 SP3 project, you cannot migrate the project.

**See also**

- Important differences compared to previous versions (Page 175)
- Conditions for Migration (Page 178)
- How to migrate SQL Server 2000 databases (Page 179)
- Additional Steps (Page 186)

4.2 Important differences compared to previous versions

Introduction

With version V7.5, WinCC offers new and extended functions compared to the previous version. You can find an overview of the new features in the section "What's New in WinCC V7.5".

Documentation of previous versions

As of WinCC V7, several WinCC controls have been replaced by new WinCC controls. You can still use these controls in migrated projects.

You can find the documentation on the replaced WinCC controls after the description of the current controls.

Changeover to SQL Server 2016 in WinCC V7.5

Starting in WinCC V7.5, Microsoft SQL Server 2016 SP2 64-bit is used.

If you are working with WinCC projects that were created with versions prior to WinCC V6.2 SP2, read the notes under "How to migrate SQL Server 2000 databases (Page 179)".

WinCC "OPC UA" channel: Changed configuration as of WinCC V7.4 SP1

As of WinCC V7.4 SP1, you fully configure the OPC-UA channel in the WinCC Configuration Studio.

In tag management, the OPC UA connections are created parallel to the OPC channel.

When you use OPC UA in a WinCC project that was created with WinCC prior to V7.4, the connections and tags are automatically migrated with the project.

Adhere to the following sequence if you have exported WinCC OPC UA tags:

1. Import the exported WinCC OPC UA tags.
2. Migrate the WinCC project.

WinCC Configuration Studio as configuration interface WinCC V7.3 and higher

WinCC Configuration Studio provides a simple and efficient means of configuring bulk data for WinCC projects.

The following editors have been integrated in WinCC Configuration Studio:

- Tag Management
- Menus and toolbars
- Text and graphic lists
- Alarm Logging
- Tag Logging
- Text library
4.2 Important differences compared to previous versions

- User Administrator
- User Archive
- Horn
- Picture Tree
- WinCC Tag Simulator

The WinCC Configuration Studio replaces the functionality of WinCC Configuration Tool and WinCC Archive Configuration Tool.

Conversion to Unicode in WinCC V7.2

Starting from WinCC V7.2, WinCC is Unicode-capable.

- The Asian version contains all functionalities of the European version.
- Projects created in the Asian version can be executed on a European version and vice versa. A "License Key USB Hardlock" is a prerequisite for running projects in Asian languages.
- An WinCC project may contain several languages. The languages do not need to have the same code page.
  - The text library may contain text in languages with different code pages. A text column is generated accordingly for each language. For this purpose, set a font that contains all necessary characters.
  - You may add different Runtime languages to a WinCC project, regardless of the code page of these languages. All languages listed in the text library are available in Runtime.
  - Process tag names may contain both Chinese and German characters, for example. You may archive these process tags and view them in Runtime in TagLogging controls.
- Setup contains a project library for all languages.

### NOTICE

| The source language of a project cannot be set more than once in the migrator |
| You cannot rectify an incorrect setting of the source language, because a project can be migrated only once to the version. |
| Backup the projects and project libraries before you launch migration. |

The following must be installed for migration of Asian projects on a European operating system:

- Asian language support
- The respective language code page.

The source language of the project must be known and set up for migration.
Exceptions

- Scripting components.
  VB Scripts may contain text in a specific language.
  The C compiler does not support Unicode. Even though you can save C scripts in Unicode, for example, the compiler converts them into multi-byte character strings (MBCS).
- Older Active X elements
- Channels, to ensure compatibility with the Channel Development Kit (CDK) and data types within the PLC.

Communication channels

The following communication channels are no longer supported:

- WinCC V7.0 or higher:
  - Windows DDE
  - SIMATIC S5 Ethernet TF
- WinCC V7.5 or higher:
  - PROFIBUS FMS

If necessary, remove the connection prior to migration.

See also

How to migrate SQL Server 2000 databases (Page 179)
4.3 Conditions for Migration

Introduction

You can migrate a WinCC project on any computer on which WinCC has been installed. The WinCC Project Migrator is included in the standard installation scope of WinCC.

Use Project Duplicator to copy the configuration data of the project to the migration computer. For information on copying projects, refer to the "Working with projects" > "Copying and duplicating projects" section in the WinCC Information System.

The code page settings of projects that you want to migrate in a single step must be uniform.

Requirements

The computer on which the migration should be performed must fulfill the following conditions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free storage space on the hard disk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC version installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC version project data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The requirements are specified in the &quot;Hardware requirements&quot; and &quot;Software requirements&quot; section of the installation instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In addition, at least the size of the overall project. Migration increases the size of the projects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User must be a member of the &quot;SIMATIC HMI&quot; group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC V7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC V7.4, V7.3, V7.2, V7.0 or V6.2 SP3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V7.5 RC license or RT license for PowerTags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC closed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Runtime deactivated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC Editors closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• WinCC Explorer closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

How to migrate SQL Server 2000 databases (Page 179)
4.4 How to migrate SQL Server 2000 databases

WinCC projects that were created with versions prior to WinCC V6.2 SP2 include database settings of the SQL Server 2000.

To access databases with the current SQL Server that were created with versions prior to SQL Server 2005, you must change the compatibility setting.

To do so, use the SQL Server Management Studio up to maximum SQL Server 2008. You connect the database using the *.MDF file, change the settings and remove the database once again.

Edit all databases that are part of your WinCC project:

- Databases in the local WinCC project
- Distributed systems: Databases on all PCs of the WinCC system
- Databases on the file server
- Databases on an archive server
- Swapped-out databases

**Requirement**

- You have created backup copies of the databases in the WinCC system. Back up the associated *.LDF file for each *.MDF file.
- The SQL Server up to version SQL Server 2008 is installed on the PC.

**Procedure**

1. Open the SQL Server Management Studio.
2. Connect to the WinCC instance. Enter the following path in the "Server name" field:
   - `<Computer name>\WINCC`
3. Select the entry "Append" in the shortcut menu of "Databases". The "Append databases" dialog opens.
4. Click "Add". The "Search database files" dialog opens.
5. Select the project database and confirm with "OK".
6. Select the item "Properties" in the shortcut menu of the database. The "Database Properties" dialog opens.
   - In the "Options" view, the field "Degree of compatibility" has the entry "SQL Server 2000 (80)".
7. In the "Degree of compatibility" drop down list under "Options" select the entry "SQL Server 2008 (100)". Confirm your entries with "OK".
8. Select the item "Tasks > Disconnect" in the shortcut menu of the database. The "Disconnect database" dialog opens.
9. Confirm your entries with "OK".  
   The connection to the database was disconnected.

10. Repeat steps 3 to 9 for each database that is part of the WinCC project.

Result

The WinCC project can be migrated.

See also

[Conditions for Migration](Page 178)
4.5 How to migrate the WinCC data

Introduction

This chapter describes the migration of WinCC projects of WinCC V6.2 SP3 or higher to WinCC V7.5.

You have two options of migrating the projects:

- Migration of the configuration data and runtime data when opening an old project
- Using WinCC Migrator to migrate several projects in a single step.

There is no difference between single-user projects, multi-user projects and clients with their own projects with regard to migration.

Duration of the migration

The time it takes to migrate a project depends on the project size and computer performance.

The time it takes to migrate the runtime data varies depending on the number of messages and tags. The operation may take several hours.

---

Note

Creating a backup

Generate a backup copy of the project prior to migration.

You can rely on this copy of the original project to retrieve your data if migration fails.

Upgrading of versions < V7.2

- WinCC projects before V7.2 are migrated to UNICODE.
  Tables that do not originate from WinCC are excluded from migration.
- If you have used a DDE connection in WinCC prior to V7.0, you must remove this connection prior to migration.
  DDE is no longer supported as of WinCC V7.0.
- We know from experience that some customer projects cannot be upgraded with version jumps.
  If appropriate, migrate from version to version: V6 > V7.0 > V7.2 > V7.5

Additional information on migration of WinCC versions V4 or higher is available under the following URL (entry ID=44029132):


---

Using WinCC Project Migrator to migrate the WinCC projects

1. In the "Siemens Automation" Windows program group, select the entry "Project Migrator".
   Project Migrator opens with the "CCMigrator - Step 1 of 2" start window.
2. Select the project directory in which the WinCC project is located by clicking the button "...".
   If migrating several projects, select the corresponding paths of the directories that contain the WinCC projects.
3. Set the language of the computer on which you have created the project or projects. The language version that was set in the OS language options for non-Unicode programs or in the system locale is set by default.

4. Click "Migrate". The "CCMigrator - Step 2 of 2" window opens. Project Migrator displays the migration steps. Wait for successful completion of the migration. The migration of a project may take several hours.

5. If migration was successfully completed, the Project Migrator sends the following message: "WinCC project migrated successfully".

6. Click "Finish".

See also

4.6 How to migrate S7 projects

Introduction

You have three options for migrating S7 projects of WinCC V6.2 SP3 or higher:

- Migration of the configuration data and Runtime data of an S7 project when opening the old project
- Using SIMATIC Manager to migrate an S7 multi-project
- Using WinCC Migrator to migrate several WinCC projects in a single step. This last option includes the WinCC projects, but not the S7 project. The OM database is migrated the next time you open the S7 project.

Note

Generate a backup copy of the project prior to migration. You can rely on this copy of the original project to retrieve your data if migration fails.

Migrating an S7 project

1. Open the S7 project. You are prompted to start migration.
2. Click "Yes". The WinCC Migrator opens. The project path is set by default. You cannot select or enter a different path.
3. Set the language of the computer on which the project was created. The language version that was set in the OS language options for non-Unicode programs or in the system locale is set by default.
4. Click "Migrate". Wait for successful completion of the migration.
5. Acknowledge the prompt to wait for completion of the migration. Migration is completed and the S7 project opens.

Migrating an S7 multi-project

1. Open the S7 multi-project. Proceed to step 2 if none of the project partitions is opened automatically. Otherwise, the project is migrated as specified in chapter "Migrating an S7 project". Wait for completion of the migration. Proceed as follows. You may also open the project partitions successively to migrate them separately.
2. Select the "Migrate OS projects" command in the "Tools" menu of SIMATIC Manager. The WinCC Project Migrator opens. You cannot select or enter a different path.
3. Set the language of the computer on which the project was created. The language version that was set in the OS language options for non-Unicode programs or in the system locale is set by default.
4. Click "Migrate". Wait for successful completion of the migration.
5. Confirm the final prompt. Migration is complete.
Using WinCC Migrator to migrate all integrated WinCC projects

You may also use WinCC Migrator to migrate all integrated WinCC projects. The procedure corresponds with the description in "How to migrate WinCC data".

You are prompted to start migration if you now open an S7 project. Click "Yes" to open WinCC Migrator. You are informed of the updated state of the project as soon as you click "Migrate".

---

**Note**

**You must migrate all components of an S7 project**

You must first migrate all components of an S7 project before you can work on this project. Operation of a partially migrated project may result in inconsistencies.
4.7 Migrating Multi-User Projects

Introduction

Clients are migrated together with the associated multi-user project.

When migrating multi-user projects, proceed in exactly the same way as in the migration of single user projects.

Make a backup copy of the project before the migration. You can rely on this copy of the original project to retrieve your data if migration fails.

Multi-user System with One Server

In a multi-user system, all required data is transferred to the server when migrating the multi-user project.

No data is stored on clients created in multi-user projects. Therefore, no client projects are created on the WinCC clients in the new WinCC version either. The settings necessary for the WinCC clients and respective preferred server are defined in the multi-user project.

Following migration, a package must be created in the multi-user project. If an existing package was deleted for this, the newly created package must have the same name.

In the "ServerData" editor, activate the "Automatic import" setting under "Implicit Update". This provides all necessary data to clients which do not run their own project.

Multi-user System with Several Servers

If clients which run their own project were used in your original project, migrate each client project separately. Proceed in exactly the same way as for a single user project or a multi-user project. After migration, create new packages on the servers and load them onto the client. If existing packages were deleted, the newly created packages must get the respective names of the deleted packages.

It is possible that the original system uses several clients with their project with the same configuration and runtime data. In this case, migrate one client with their own project and copy to the other WinCC clients. Use Project Duplicator for the configuration data. Then load the packages of the respective servers on each client.

Note

The following restrictions apply after the migration of multi-user systems:

Access to clients: Automatic, simultaneous booting of several clients is no longer possible. Each server in the system can be activated by using the "Simatic Shell" dialog for remote access.

Deactivating servers and clients in multi-user systems: An automatic, simultaneous booting of several servers and clients is no longer possible. Each server in the system can be deactivated by using the "WinCC Projects" dialog for remote access.
4.8 Additional Steps

Introduction

You still have to make some project settings after migration.

Updating System Messages in Alarm Logging

Once you have integrated the system messages in the message system and completed migration, you must update the system messages in Alarm Logging. New system messages are also applied with this step.

1. In the table area of Alarm Logging, select the system messages to be updated.
   If you want to update all system messages, select the "Select All" command in the shortcut menu.
2. Select the "Update" command in the shortcut menu.
   Selected system messages are updated, and new system messages are integrated into the project. The system messages obtain texts from the selected language for the selected user text block.

Adapting process-controlled archive tags

If the "Compile OS" function is used, the assignment of the process controlled archive tags changes. The name of process controlled archive tags is no longer defined according to the raw data tag ID. The name of the raw data tag is used instead. You must convert these tags to adapt their assignment, for example, in Controls. For this purpose, open the "Properties" dialog of the archive tag once and then close it again without making any changes.

If you are not using the "Compile OS" function, you can continue using the process-controlled archive tags in their original structure in the new WinCC version.

Multi-user projects Loading packages

After migration of a multi-user project, create the packages on the server and downloaded these to the clients. For more information, refer to "Configuration > Multi-user systems > "Server configuration" or "Client configuration" in the WinCC Information System.

WinCC/WebUX: Converting project data

A project created with a WinCC version earlier than WinCC V7.4 must be adjusted for use in WinCC/WebUX:

- If you have already used WinCC/WebUX V7.3, convert the process pictures and project functions (Visual Basic Script).
- If you want to use process pictures with migrated VB project functions in WebUX as of V7.4, convert the project functions.
Procedure

1. In the WinCC Explorer, select the menu command "Tools > Convert project data".

2. Select the project data to be converted and confirm with "OK".
   - Pictures and faceplates
   - C and VB project functions and actions

3. Confirm with "OK".
   The selected data is converted to the current version of WinCC.

See also

Migration Diagnostics (Page 200)
Introduction (Page 171)
4.9 Upgrading a Redundant System in Normal Operation

4.9.1 Upgrading a Redundant System in Normal Operation

Introduction

You update a redundant system to the new WinCC version in steps. This will not interfere with plant operation.

Compare the initial situation described in the quick reference instructions with your system and prepare your system accordingly.

Note
Framework Conditions for Upgrading During Ongoing Operation

A client may always only be connected to one server, on which the same WinCC version is installed.

An upgrade in WinCC ServiceMode is not possible in logged off state.

Objective

- The automation system remains permanently in Runtime.
- The process is constantly operable.

Process

Upgrading consists of the following phases:

1. Upgrading the Standby Server
2. Upgrade WinCC clients
3. Upgrading Master Server
4. Defining Master Server

4.9.2 Quick Reference Instructions: Upgrading Redundant Systems in Normal Operation

Introduction

A redundant system in operation is upgraded in four phases. Each phase is divided into individual working steps. The necessary working steps are listed in the Section "Procedure". Detailed instructions are provided in the chapters "Phase 1" to "Phase 4".
Initial Situation

- Server1 is the master server.
  (Server1 stands for all master servers in a redundant server pair.)
- Server2 is the standby server.
  (Server2 stands for all standby servers in a redundant server pair.)
- WinCC Client1 is connected to Server1.
  (WinCC Client1 stands for all WinCC clients originally connected to Server1, which should be reconnected with Server1 after the migration.)
- WinCC Client2 is connected to Server2 because it is configured for it as the preferred server.
  (WinCC Client2 stands for all WinCC clients originally connected to Server2, which should be reconnected with Server2 after the migration.)

Procedure - Quick Reference

---

**Note**

In order not to interrupt operation of the system, observe the sequence of steps described. The working steps from Phase 1 to Phase 4 must be completed without any longer interruptions.

---

**Note**

Create a backup of the entire system before upgrading the server.

Configure a preferred server for all clients to be upgraded.

---

**Phase 1: Upgrading the Standby Server**

1. WinCC Client1: Configure Server1 as preferred server
2. WinCC Client2: Configure Server1 as preferred server
3. Server2: Deactivate
4. Server2: Exit WinCC
5. Server2: Reboot the computer
6. Server2: Install new WinCC version
7. Server2: Migrate project
8. Server2: Activate
9. Server2: Other redundant server pairs: Execute Steps 1 to 8

**Phase 2: Upgrade WinCC clients**

10. WinCC Client2: Deactivate and exit WinCC
11. WinCC Client2: Reboot the computer
12. WinCC Client2: Install new WinCC version
13. WinCC Client2: Migrate project
14. WinCC Client2: Configure Server2 as preferred server  
15. WinCC Client2: Activate  
16. WinCC Client1 and other WinCC clients: Execute Steps 10 to 15

Phase 3: Upgrading Master Server  
17. Server1: Deactivate and exit WinCC  
18. Server1: Reboot the computer  
19. Server1: Install new WinCC version  
20. Server1: Migrate project  
21. Server1: Activate  
22. WinCC Client1: Loading Packages and Configuring the Preferred Server  
23. WinCC Client2: Loading Packages and Configuring the Preferred Server  
24. Other redundant server pairs: Execute Steps 17 to 23

Phase 4: Defining Master Server and Completing Upgrade  
25. Switch master server manually

Result  
When all the working steps from 1 to 25 have been completed, the system has the following status:  
- Upgraded Server1 is the master server.  
- Upgraded Server2 is the standby server.  
- Upgraded WinCC Client1 is connected to its preferred server Server1.  
- Upgraded WinCC Client2 is connected to its preferred server Server2.  
Upgrading your redundant system to the new WinCC version is complete.

Note  
Following migration of a server, the respective packages must be regenerated on this server.  
Following migration of a client with own project, the respective packages must be regenerated on this server.

4.9.3 Phase 1: Upgrading the Standby Server

Introduction  
In the first phase, the redundant standby server Server2 is upgraded. This prevents an unnecessary redundancy switching by WinCC clients.
You system will only run on one server while you complete the phase 1 steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Procedure</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In order not to interrupt operation of the system, observe the sequence of steps described.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete the steps in phases 1 to 4 without any longer interruption.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a backup copy before upgrading the server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Initial Situation Prior to Phase 1**
- Server1 is the configured default master server.  
  (Server1 is synonym for any master server of a redundant pair of servers.)
- Server2 is the standby.  
  (Server2 is synonym for any standby server of a redundant pair of servers.)
- WinCC Client1 is connected to Server1.  
  The package of the master server is loaded onto WinCC Client1.
- (WinCC Client1 is synonym for all WinCC clients that were originally connected to Server1 and which have to be reconnected with Server1 after migration.) WinCC-Client2 is connected to Server2 because this is its configured preferred server.  
  The master server package is loaded on WinCC Client2.  
  (WinCC-Client2 is synonym for all WinCC clients that were originally connected to Server2 and which have to be reconnected with Server2 after migration.)

**Procedure, Phase 1**
For a detailed description of the procedure, please click one of the following working steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Please note that you must work alternately on Server1 and Server2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **WinCC Client1: Configure Server1 as preferred server**
   - So that each client is connected with the associated server during the upgrade, a preferred server must be configured for all clients in the system.
   - If a preferred server is not yet configured for WinCC Client1, then enter Server1 as the preferred server.
   - Deactivate WinCC Client1 and reactivate the client so that the changed preferred server is applied.
2. **WinCC Client2: Configure Server1 as preferred server**

Configure Server1 as the preferred server for WinCC Client2.

Deactivate WinCC Client2 and reactivate the client so that the changed preferred server is applied.

WinCC Client2 connects with Server1.

3. **Server2: Deactivate**

Deactivate WinCC Runtime on the standby Server2.

The system behaves as follows:

- WinCC Client1 remains connected to Server1.
- WinCC Client2, for which Server1 is now configured as the preferred server, remains connected to Server1.
- Server1 detects an interruption through the deactivation of Server2.
  
  If you have configured system messages, Server1 then creates a corresponding process control message.

Create a backup of Server2 and save the WinCC data before you upgrade the server.

4. **Server2: Exit WinCC**

End WinCC on the existing standby server Server2.

5. **Server2: Reboot the computer**

Close Windows and restart Server2.

6. **Server2: Install new WinCC version**

The WinCC server with the new WinCC version runs only under the system conditions described in the "Installation Notes" of the WinCC Information System.

Install the new WinCC version with all necessary options or run an update. Information on installation is available in the WinCC Information System under "Installation Notes".

7. **Server2: Migrate project**

Migrate the WinCC data of Server2.

Modify the project for the new WinCC after the migration. Observe the corresponding notes in the chapter "Additional steps".

---

**Note**

Following migration of a server, the respective packages must be deleted and regenerated on this server. The package must have the same name as the deleted package.
8. Server2: Activate

1. Start WinCC on Server2.
2. Activate WinCC Runtime.

The system behaves as follows:

- There is no server switching. The activated Server2 becomes the standby server in the upgraded WinCC project.
- The WinCC Client1 remains connected to Server1.
- The WinCC Client2 remains connected to Server1.

Wait for completion of any active redundancy synchronization before you go to the next step. If you have configured system messages, Server1 then creates a corresponding process control message.

9. Other redundant server pairs: Execute steps 1 to 8

If several redundant server pairs are implemented, the respective standby server, Server2, must be upgraded.

Execute steps 1 through 8 for each Server2.

Complete the upgrading of one standby server before beginning with upgrading the next standby server.

Result of Phase 1

- Standby Server2 has been upgraded.
- WinCC Client2 is connected to Server1.
- WinCC Client1 is connected to Server1.

4.9.4 Phase 2: Upgrade WinCC clients

Introduction

In phase 2, you upgrade all WinCC clients to the new WinCC version.

In order for the system to remain operable, at least one WinCC client must remain connected to an active server of the same WinCC version during the upgrade. The same WinCC version must run on this server as on the WinCC client.

Initial situation in advance of phase 2

- Server1 is the master server with the previous WinCC version.
- Upgraded Server2 is the standby server in the migrated project with the new WinCC version.
• WinCC Client1 is connected to Server1.
• WinCC Client2 is connected to Server1.

Phase 2 procedure
For a detailed description of the procedure, please click one of the following working steps.

10. WinCC Client2: Deactivate and exit WinCC
Deactivate WinCC Runtime on the WinCC Client2 and exit WinCC.

11. WinCC Client2: Reboot the computer
Close Windows and restart the WinCC client.

12. WinCC Client2: Install new WinCC version
A WinCC client with the new WinCC version runs only under the system conditions described in the "Installation Notes" of the WinCC Information System. Create a backup of the client and save the WinCC data before the installation.
Install the new WinCC version with all necessary options or perform an update. Information on installation is available in the WinCC Information System under "Installation Notes".

13. WinCC Client2: Migrate project
Migrate the WinCC data of the WinCC client.
Modify the project for the new WinCC version after the migration. Observe the corresponding notes in the chapter "Additional steps".

Note
Following migration of a WinCC client with own project, the packages must be reloaded to the migrated server.

14. WinCC Client2: Enter Server2 as preferred server
Change the preferred server in the migrated WinCC client and enter Server2 instead of Server1.

15. WinCC Client2: Activate
1. Start WinCC on the migrated WinCC client.
2. Activate WinCC Runtime.
The system behaves as follows:
- The WinCC client connects to the upgraded Server2.
- Server2 remains the standby server.

16. Other WinCC clients: Execute Steps 10 to 15

For WinCC Client1, the same procedure applies as for WinCC Client2.

When a WinCC client has been upgraded, repeat steps 10 to 15 for the next WinCC client until all the WinCC clients in the system have been upgraded.

After the upgrade, also enter Server2 as the preferred server for WinCC Client1.

Complete the upgrading of one WinCC client before beginning with the upgrading of the next WinCC client.

Result of Phase 2
- Upgraded WinCC Client2 is connected to the upgraded Server2 as the preferred server.
- Upgraded WinCC Client1 is connected to Server2 as preferred server.
- Server1 is the master server with the previous WinCC version.
- Upgraded Server2 is the standby server in the migrated project with the new WinCC version.

4.9.5 Phase 3: Upgrading Master Server

Introduction
In Phase 3, the master server Server1 is upgraded.

While carrying out the working steps in Phase 3, the system runs on just one server. The system can be operated via the WinCC clients upgraded in Phase 2. Further information on redundancy synchronization is available in the WinCC Information System under the topic "Configurations > Redundant Systems".

Note
If necessary, create a backup copy before upgrading the server.

Initial Situation Prior to Phase 3
- Server1 is the master server with the previous WinCC version.
- Upgraded Server2 is the standby server in the migrated project with the new WinCC version.
- The redundancy synchronization of Server1 and Server2 is complete.
• Upgraded WinCC Client1 is connected to Server2.
• Upgraded WinCC Client2 is connected to its preferred server Server2.

**Procedure, Phase 3**

For a detailed description of the procedure, please click one of the following working steps.

---

**Note**

Please note that you must work alternately on Server1 and Server2.

---

17. **Server1: Deactivate and exit WinCC**

1. Deactivate WinCC Runtime on the master server Server1.
2. Exit WinCC on the server.

Create a backup of Server2 and save the WinCC data before you upgrade the server.

18. **Server1: Reboot the computer**

Close Windows and restart Server1.

19. **Server1: Install new WinCC version**

A server with the new WinCC version runs only under the system conditions described in the "Installation Notes" of the WinCC Information System. First, save the WinCC data on the server if necessary.

Install the new WinCC version with all necessary options or perform an update. Information on installation is available in the WinCC Information System under "Installation Notes".

20. **Server1: Migrate project**

Migrate the WinCC data of the server. Modify the project for the new WinCC version after the migration. Observe the corresponding notes in the chapter "Additional steps".

---

**Note**

Following migration of a server, the respective packages must be regenerated on this server. The package must have the same name as the original package.

---

21. **Server1: Activate**

1. Activate WinCC Runtime.
The system behaves as follows:

- Server1 becomes the standby server.
- Archive synchronization is performed for the message archives, process value archives and user archives.
- If system messages have been configured, a corresponding process control message is generated.
- All the values during the downtime period are synchronized.

22. WinCC Client1: Loading Packages and Configuring the Preferred Server

Load the Server1 package to the WinCC clients.
Configure Server1 as the preferred server for WinCC Client1.
Deactivate and activate the respective client to apply the changed configuration to the preferred server.
- The WinCC Client1 connects to the upgraded preferred server, Server1.

23. WinCC Client2: Loading Packages and Configuring the Preferred Server

Load the Server1 package to the WinCC clients.
Configure Server2 as the preferred server for WinCC Client2.
Deactivate and activate the respective client to apply the changed configuration to the preferred server.
- The WinCC Client2 connects to the master server, Server2.

24. Other redundant server pairs: Execute Steps 17 to 23

If several redundant server pairs are implemented, then upgrade the master server, Server_1.
Execute steps 17 through 23 for each Server1.
Complete the upgrading of one server before beginning with the upgrading of the next server.

Result of Phase 3

- Upgraded Server1 is the standby server.
- Upgraded Server2 is the master server.
- Upgraded WinCC Client1 is connected to its preferred server Server1.
- Upgraded WinCC Client2 is connected to its preferred server Server2.
4.9.6 Phase 4: Defining Master Server and Completing Upgrade

Introduction

After upgrading the system, all WinCC clients, for which no preferred server has been configured, are connected to the master server. As a result of the redundancy switching for upgrading, the original master server, Server1, was set to standby server. The original standby server, Server2, was set to master server.

In order to restore the original status, the master server must be reset manually. Follow the instructions in step 25. This step concludes the upgrading procedure of your redundant system to the new WinCC version.

Further information on preferred servers in redundant systems is available in the WinCC Information System under the topic "Configurations > Redundant Systems".

Initial Situation Prior to Phase 4

- Server1 is the standby server.
- Server2 is the master server.
- WinCC Client1 is connected to its preferred server, Server1.
- WinCC Client2 is connected to its preferred server, Server2.

Procedure, Phase 4

For a detailed description of the procedure, click working step 25:

25. Switch master server manually

In order to restore the initial situation of the system, define Server1 as the master server manually.

Set the redundancy tag "@RM_Master" on Server1 from 0 to 1. You can query and set the redundancy tag "@RM_Master" via an I/O field, for example:

1. Configure an I/O field in the multi-user project from Server1.
2. Link the I/O field with the @RM_Master tag.
3. Enter a "1" in the I/O field in Runtime. Server1 becomes the master server. As a result of the redundancy switching, Server2 becomes the standby server.

Alternatively, the redundancy tag can be set via scripts.

Result of Phase 4

- Server1 is the master server.
- Server2 is the standby server.
- WinCC Client1 is connected to its preferred server, Server1.
- WinCC Client2 is connected to its preferred server, Server2.
Upgrading your redundant system to the new WinCC version is complete.
4.10 Migration Diagnostics

Introduction
When a fault occurs, clear the fault in a copy of the migrated project. Then restart the migration.

Errors During Migration
An error during the migration of a component does not interrupt the migration. The Project Migrator writes an error message in a diagnostics file and processes the next components. Check the list of migrated components after migration. Double-click the list entries that contain errors or warnings to view the error in a "txt" file.

Cancelation of Migration
You may restart an aborted migration after having eliminated all errors. Use a backup copy instead of the project containing the migration errors.

Migration after elimination of errors
You can migrate the individual components after having eliminated the respective errors. The computer name and the name of the local computer must match.
Select "Tools > Convert project data" in WinCC Explorer. Select the components that you want to migrate.

Diagnostics file
The Project Migrator saves the "MigratorLog.txt" diagnostics file to the directory of the migrated project. You can view this file in any text editor.
The file contains the following general information:
- Project name
- Project type
- Type of migrated data
- Start and end of migration
If an error occurs during migration, the Project Migrator writes an error message in the file.
Diagnostics of WinCC with APDiag

5.1 Runtime Monitoring of Actions

Introduction

WinCC script processing is a very open system. It allows Windows APIs and dedicated DLL functions to be called. The underlying programming language C is very comprehensive and offers a high degree of freedom. Incorrect implementation of these capabilities can also lead to crashing the system. Incorrect configuration can also seriously decrease the performance of the system.

The ApDiag.exe diagnostics tool should be used to support the analysis of errors and performance problems. Note that the diagnostics application itself will affect performance; collecting additional values costs time. Individual diagnostic functions can therefore be activated and deactivated to avoid degrading the runtime of the system during operation.

This is why you should ensure that the diagnostic functions are deactivated during the final commissioning stage.

This description will not explain every possible item of diagnostic information in detail, since sound knowledge of the system architecture is required to understand it. The purpose of this description is to indicate possibilities and handling of the ApDiag diagnostics tool so that ApDiag can be utilized as intended should the need arise.
5.2 Starting ApDiag.exe

Start ApDiag

Apdiag.exe is located in the installation directory in folder "...\Siemens\WinCC\Utools".

Apdiag.exe

As soon as WinCC is opened, you can start the application as usual (double click). It is irrelevant whether runtime is activated or not. If no project has been opened, a link to the action controller can be created.

ApDiag is ended when changing projects and when closing WinCC.

To permanently display diagnostics information, independent of operation and navigation in the system, ApDiag is in the foreground. Set your window position and size so that ApDiag disturbs as little as possible. These settings are saved and reestablished again during the next startup.
5.3 ApDiag Menu Commands

5.3.1 Menu Bar Overview

Overview

ApDiag operation is described in the following chapters.

The menu bar is constructed as follows:

In the online help, you can click on a menu command with the mouse and display the respective description.

Diagnostics

Menu "Diagnostics" offers several types of diagnostics information.
Using "Start", "Change" and "Stop", the recording of diagnostic information (tracing) can be controlled.

Menu command "OnFile" can be used for defining the output source for the individual types of diagnostics information.

The runtime of actions can be measured and queue growth can be monitored with command "Profile".

Using command "FillTags", saving important diagnostics information in internal tags is activated and deactivated.

**Output**

Using menu "Output", trace entries generated with diagnostics can be output to a window, stored in a file or deleted.

The trace entries are also collected in a circulating buffer when the window is not shown.

**Info**

Menu "Info" delivers current information on the system.

The diagnostic information is output one time when selected (not automatically). The output is done as trace (Level1) and as printf.

**5.3.2 File - Exit**

**Description**

Use command "Exit" to end ApDiag.
5.3.3 Diagnostics

5.3.3.1 Start

Description

Use menu command "Start" to open a dialog, in which a diagnostics level can be selected. Select the "OK" button to start the diagnosis and write the trace point in the defined level.

The higher the level, the more frequent and less serious the trace points are.

In level 1, only faults are output, as of level 3, printf (OnErrorExecute) are output as well. Levels 9 and 10 are mainly for testing for whether the script.exe application reacts.

In chapter "Trace points and their diagnostics level), a selection of trace points is described.

The diagnosis is different from the "printf information" in that the entries are collected with the window closed as well and mainly system messages (trace points) are shown.

Other trace entries can also be created using internal functions TraceTime() and TraceText(). The functions are described in the WinCC Help.

The trace entries are output in the diagnostics window as standard.

Note

End ApDiag

The diagnosis is switched off when changing projects and when ending ApDiag.

The option "Start automatically at WinCC start" offers the ability to start the diagnosis in the defined level automatically, each time a project is opened.
Since writing the trace points influences the performance, trace should really be switched off for normal operation.

Note
End ApDiag
This setting is also retained after ending ApDiag.exe and after restarting the computer.

5.3.3.2 Change

Description
With menu command "Change", you can recognize whether a trace is switched on and change the current diagnostics level if required:

The current diagnostics level is marked. Select another level and click on "OK" to change the level.

Note
If no diagnosis is started, selecting "Change" opens no dialog.
5.3.3.3 Stop

Description
Writing trace points is ended with menu command "Stop". Since writing the trace points influences the performance, trace should really be switched off for normal operation.

Note
End ApDiag
When ending ApDiag or when changing a project, the trace is ended.

5.3.3.4 OnFile

Description
Dialog "OnFile" can be used to convert diagnostics information (e.g. OnErrorExecute, printf) into a text file. All settings are stored in the registry and are retained after a restart as well.

Number of diagnostics files
Up to ten "OnError<x>.txt" files are created by default. To create more files, change the value in the standard function "OnErrorExecute".

Prevent writing to file
Since converting the diagnostics information influences the performance and the settings made here are retained after restarting WinCC or the computer, you can use option "NothingInFile" to centrally stop writing the diagnostics information to a file.
Nothing In File

This option can be used to centrally suppress the conversion of diagnostics information to a file.

Anything In File

Use this option to centrally activate the conversion of diagnostics information. The information that is actually concerned, depends on the settings under "In File".
**OnErrorExecute**

This parameter can be used to define whether the output of an OnErrorExecute (standard function of WinCC, which is called by the system in case of an error) to a file or in the output window. An OnErrorExecute is lost when the diagnostics window is not shown, another error analysis is enabled with the output to a file, even afterward.

The following applies for the output to a file: The file is called OnError<x>.txt and is located in the installation directory:

- ..\Siemens\WinCC\Diagnose

**Write to files**

A certain number of entries is written to a file. Then the next file is begun.

It is always started with OnError0. After file OnError9, it begins with OnError0 again. After activating the project, it starts with OnError0 again the first time the function is called.

The size of the files can be influenced by modifying the limit value for tag "dwErrorCount" of this WinCC standard function in the C editor for the Global Script.

**Change maximum number of files**

To create more than ten "OnError<x>" files, open the standard function OnErrorExecute and change the maximum number of files in line 67:

```c
if (dwFileCount > 10)
```

**OnPrintf**

This parameter can be used for setting whether the outputs created by printf() are made to a file or to the output window.

The following applies for the output to a file: The file is called OnprintfX.txt and is located in the installation directory:

- ..\Siemens\WinCC\Diagnose

Particular attention is paid to the file size. 64 KB is written to a file and then the next file is begun. It is always started with Onprintf0. After file Onprintf9, it begins with Onprintf0 again. After activation, it is also started with Onprintf0 the first time the function is called.

**OnDiagnose**

When the diagnosis is switched on, all trace information for the respective level can be routed to a file.

The following applies for the output to a file: The file is called OnDiagnoseX.txt and is located in the installation directory:

- ..\Siemens\WinCC\Diagnose

Particular attention is paid to the file size. 64 KB is written to a file and then the next file is begun. It is always started with OnDiagnose0. After file OnDiagnose9 it begins with OnDiagnose0 again. After activation, it is also started with OnDiagnose0 the first time the function is called.
OnProfile

This parameter is used for defining whether the diagnostics information delivered with OnProfile will be output in a file or the application window.

The following applies for the output to a file: The file is called OnDiagnoseX.txt and is located in the installation directory:

- \Siemens\WinCC\Diagnose

Particular attention is paid to the file size. 64 KB is written to a file and then the next file is begun. It is always started with OnDiagnose0. After file OnDiagnose9 it begins with OnDiagnose0 again. After activation, it is also started with OnDiagnose0 the first time the function is called.

OnInfo

This parameter defines whether the information output via the menu Info should be output to a file.

The following applies for the output to a file: The file is called OnInfoX.txt and is located in the installation directory:

- \Siemens\WinCC\Diagnose

Particular attention is paid to the file size. 64 KB is written to a file and then the next file is begun. It is always started with OnInfo0. After file OnInfo9 it begins with OnInfo0 again. After activation, it is also started with OnInfo0 the first time the function is called.

5.3.3.5 Profile

Description

As of 10000 queued actions, by default, the system outputs message: "ActionOverflow: more than 10000 Actions to work" to diagnostics file WinCC_Sys_01.log.

With this entry, determining the cause for an increase or overflow of the queue can only be done with difficulty.

Menu command "Profile" now offers diagnostics information that enables the early detection of growth or an overflow of the queue. Time measurements can be activated for actions and an growth in the queue (ActionQueue) can be checked.

General Information on Queue Overflow

A queue overflows if too many actions are running in a cycle that is too small (gradually, the actions to be processed will build up) or an action freezes (e.g. sleep, loop, dialog output, waiting for a response from another application). All the other actions are then blocked in the queue and cannot be processed.

This can be regained to a certain extend but with 10000 entries in the queue, this is no longer possible.
Decreasing the Load

Since performance measurements themselves will cause extra load and any settings made in this context are retained after restarting WinCC or the computer, a superordinate switch has been integrated, which allows a quick overview to prevent any diagnostics measurements from remaining switched on.

Profile off

This option is superordinate and can be used to switch measurements off.

Profile on

This option is superordinate and can be used to switch measurements on. It is absolutely necessary to switch the switch and the desired information on to activate a measurement.
General

If option "Call On Time for each Action" is activated, a time measurement is performed for every action that is executed and is output with standard function "On Time".

Example

==============================================OnTime==============================================
dwCode:                         (Thread Id 327)            113  
szTimeText:                      (Thread Id 327)            PROFILE_EACH_ACTION  
dbITime:                         (Thread Id 327)            358.744  
szApplicationName:               (Thread Id 327)            PDL.RuntimeSystem  
bCycle:                         (Thread Id 327)              cycle  
szFunctionName:                  (Thread Id 327)            @51  
lpszPictureName:                 (Thread Id 327)            STARTBILD.BILDFENSTER1:AKTIONSTESTBILD3  
lpszObjectName:                  (Thread Id 327)            Button17  
lpszPropertyName:               (Thread Id 327)            (NULL)  
dwParamSize:                    (Thread Id 327)              12  
==============================================OnTime==============================================

Check

If checkbox "Check which Action need more than xx msec" is activated, the runtime for all actions that run longer than the defined time is output. This allows limiting the number of outputs and less load is created by the measurement itself (the function OnTime will not continue to cycle).

Example

==============================================OnTime==============================================
dwCode:                         (Thread Id 492)            114  
szTimeText:                      (Thread Id 492)            PROFILE_FOR_XX_TIME  
too long:                       (Thread Id 492)            4325.03  
szApplicationName:               (Thread Id 492)            PDL.RuntimeSystem  
bCycle:                         (Thread Id 492)              cycle  
szFunctionName:                  (Thread Id 492)            @55  
lpszPictureName:                 (Thread Id 492)            STARTBILD.BILDFENSTER1:AKTIONSTESTBILD  
lpszObjectName:                  (Thread Id 492)            EAField1  
lpszPropertyName:               (Thread Id 492)            Visible  
dwParamSize:                    (Thread Id 492)              12  
==============================================OnTime==============================================

Check the Request/Action Queues

This parameter allows recognition of slow growth in the queue, which would only lead to error message "more than 10000 Actions to Work" after several hours or days. Individual pictures can also be checked for correct action programming.

Value "ScanRate" can be used to define after which amount of new jobs that the length of the queue should be checked. If the queue has grown by more than the value defined with Gradient, a notice in the form of a printf is output.

If you enter e.g. with ScanRate "100" and Gradient "30", then after 100 new entries (actions) have been placed in the queue, a check is performed to determine whether the queue has
grown by more than 30 entries (less than 70 processed from the 100 new jobs). If this is the case, the following diagnostics information is output in the form of a printf().

**Example**

The ActionCount grows too fastly. ScanRate: 100 projectGradient: 30 actualGradient: 87

### 5.3.3.6 FillTags

**Description**

Using menu command "FillTags", saving important diagnostics values in tags can be switched on.

The diagnostics tags are created during the creation of a WinCC project and can be used as usual. Switching on and off is also possible with internal function FillDiagnoseInTags(). This function is described in the WinCC Help.

Note that writing the diagnostics values created more basic load. The runtime for each started action is lengthened since the diagnostics values also have to be written in the tags. This functionality should therefore be switched on for a short time only.

**WinCC Diagnostics tags**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@SCRIPT_COUNT_TAGS</td>
<td>This tag contains the current number of tags requested via Script.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@SCRIPT_COUNT_REQUEST_IN_QUEUES</td>
<td>This tag contains the current number of jobs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@SCRIPT_COUNT_ACTIONS_IN_QUEUES</td>
<td>This tag contains the current number of actions that exist for processing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WinCC: General information and installation
System Manual, 09/2018, A5E45518509-AA
5.3.4 Output

5.3.4.1 Output On Screen

Description

Use menu command "Output On Screen" to open the diagnostics window.

The previously collected trace entries are output here. Unlike Output Window, the diagnostics window is only updated when opening and with the "Refresh" button. The contents are only deleted if Reset is actuated or the diagnostics buffer has been written full.

Note

Sequence in the Diagnostics Buffer

The diagnostics buffer is a circulating buffer. The lowest entry is therefore not necessarily the oldest entry.
5.3.4.2 Output To File

Description
Menu command "Output To File" can be used one time to put the previously collected trace entries into a text file.

```
Save As

Save in: uTools

File name: diagnose

Save as type: Textdateien (*.txt)

Save
Cancel
```

5.3.4.3 Reset Buffer

Description
Use menu command "Reset Buffer" to delete the previously collected trace entries.
This functionality corresponds with the "Reset" button in the diagnostics window.

5.3.5 Info

5.3.5.1 FirstAction

Description
Menu command "FirstAction" delivers information on the action that is running and therefore provides the ability to recognize which action in the queue is in the first position and e.g. blocks the processing of other actions with a loop.
Similar to OnErrorExecute, the actions that are currently being processed are put in a text file. In addition, the stack for these actions is output so that it is possible to recognize whether the action e.g. is frozen in DLL calls.
The information on the currently processed action is also output again as OnErrorExecute.

**Note**

If no action is blocking the processing, no text file will be created and no OnErrorExecute will be output.

**Example**

A "blocking" action can be simulated using the MessageBox(NULL, "Welt", "Hallo", MB_OK); function.

The action which calls the error box is not resumed until the box has been closed. This is comparable to a Message Box with a loop or a Sleep().

To check whether an action is blocking processing:

1. Start ...Siemens\WinCC\uTools\Apdiag.exe.
2. Select "Info > FirstAction".
3. Enter the name of a text file in dialog "Save as".

The following information is then put in the text file:
And the following OnErrorExecute is output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dwThreadId</td>
<td>2532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dwErrorObject</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szErrorText</td>
<td>INFO Something is Hanging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szApplicationName</td>
<td>PDLRuntimeSystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bCycle</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>szFunctionName</td>
<td>STARTBILD.BILDFENSTER1:LEERBILD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipz2PictureName</td>
<td>STARTBILD.BILDFENSTER1:LEERBILD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipz2ObjectName</td>
<td>Button10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipz2PropertyType</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dwParamSize</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"MB_SYSTEMMODAL" parameter

Execution of a message box function with parameter "MB_SYSTEMMODAL" ensures that the message box is displayed in the foreground. If this parameter is not specified, the message box is hidden to users and (in the background) and cannot be operated. Mouse click events outside the message box are written to a buffer and processed after you exit the message box.

Example: MessageBox(NULL, "Welt", "Hallo", MB_SYSTEMMODAL | MB_OK);
5.3.5.2 Count of Connections

Description
The menu command "Count of Connections" lists all applications that have established a connection to the action control.

Example
=================================================================================================
1. Applikation: GSC_RT
2. Applikation: ITLG-RT
3. Applikation: PDLRuntimeSystem
4. Applikation: APDiagnose
=================================================================================================

5.3.5.3 Count of Actions in RequestQueue

Description
Menu command "Count of Actions in RequestQueue" outputs the current number of actions that are queued for processing.
There are jobs from Global Script, cycle jobs from pictures and event-controlled jobs from pictures.

Example
=================================================================================================
Applikation: GSC_RT cycle Count of Requests 0
Applikation: PDLRuntimeSystem cycle Count of Requests 0
Applikation: PDLRuntimeSystem acycle Count of Requests 1
=================================================================================================

5.3.5.4 Count of TransAction

Description
Menu command "Count of TransAction" lists the current number of transactions for every application that is logged in.
One transaction is established e.g. for every event-controlled action, for every picture window, which contains at least one cyclic action, and for global scripts.

Example

1. Applikation: GSC_RT Count of Transactions 1
2. Applikation: ITLG-RT Count of Transactions 0
3. Applikation: PDLRuntimeSystem Count of Transactions 7
4. Applikation: APDiagnose Count of Transactions 0

5.3.5.5 Count of Actions of each Transaction

Description

Menu command "Count of Actions of each Transaction" lists the number of actions contained in the transactions.

The output is in the following form:

- Name of the Application
- Number of the Transaction
- Number of Actions

At the end of the list, the total sum of actions is output.

Example

Info to Transactions: Count of Action in Transaction
1. Applikation: GSC_RT Count of Actions in TransAction(0): 15
3. Applikation: PDLRuntimeSystem Count of Actions in TransAction(7): 1
3. Applikation: PDLRuntimeSystem Count of Actions in TransAction(0): 19
Info to Transactions: Count of Action in Transaction 40
5.3.5.6 Count of Tags in each Transaction

Description

Menu command "Count of Tags in each Transaction" lists the number of tags requested in the transactions.

The output is in the following form:

- Name of the Application
- Number of the Transaction
- Cycle time, with which the tags use for logging in
- Number of tags

At the end of the list, the total sum of tags requested in transactions is output.

The numerical value defined in Cycle corresponds with the following trigger:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cycle</th>
<th>Trigger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Upon change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>250 ms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>500 ms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>10 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>5 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>10 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-15</td>
<td>User cycle 1-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

===============================================================================================
Info to Transaktions: Count of Tags in Transaction
1. Applikation: GSC_RT Count of Tags in TransAction(0) in Cycle 0: 1
1. Applikation: GSC_RT Count of Tags in TransAction(0) in Cycle 4: 6
3. Applikation: PDLRuntimeSystem Count of Tags in TransAction(0) in Cycle 2: 1
Info to Transaktions: Count of Tags in Transaction 8
===============================================================================================

5.3.5.7 Count of Actions in Cycle

Description

Menu command "Count of Actions in Cycle" lists the amount of cyclic actions sorted by trigger. In this case, the numerical values correspond with the following triggers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>250 ms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>500 ms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>10 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>5 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>10 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 14</td>
<td>User cycle 1 - 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

=================================================================================================
Count of Actions in Cycle (0): 6
Count of Actions in Cycle (1): 5
Count of Actions in Cycle (2): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (3): 6
Count of Actions in Cycle (4): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (5): 1
Count of Actions in Cycle (6): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (7): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (8): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (9): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (10): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (11): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (12): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (13): 0
Count of Actions in Cycle (14): 0
=================================================================================================
5.3.5.8 Count of Functions

**Description**

Menu command "Count of Functions" provides the number of standard functions and project functions and lists the functions by name.

**Example**

```
Count of Functions 112
FunctionName UTC PathName \SERVER1\WinCC50_Project_GSLasttest \library\UTC.Fct
FunctionName WriteNow PathName \SERVER1\WinCC50_Project_GSLasttest \library\WriteNow.Fct
```

5.3.6 Trace Points - Change Level

**Description**

The levels of certain trace points can be changed with this menu command.

If you expect e.g. only one certain trace point, you can set the respective level high and are no longer disrupted by a number of other trace points.

You can change the level by double clicking "Actual Level" for the desired trace point, setting the desired level in the dialog box and leaving the box with "OK".

The original level is set again with a reset.
5.3.7 Output Window - Open / Close

Description

Opens or closes the output window.

The output window corresponds with application window GSC diagnosis, but offers the following advantages:

• It is independent of the configuration. The configuration does not have to be accessed, especially with third-party projects.
• It remains visible with an picture change as well.
• It can be opened even before activating runtime and can therefore show error messages during power up, which remain hidden from the application window GSC diagnosis.
5.4 Appendix

5.4.1 Trace points and their diagnostics level

Introduction

Following is a list of selected trace points.

The trace points indicated with "d" can be changed in the respective level. These are allocated to level 9 by default.

Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trace point</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NewRequest nCount</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>With more than 5 jobs, the position is output in the queue for every new job (Request).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more as 10000 Actions to work</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Overflow, more than 10000 actions in the queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before Execute dwID</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Before executing an action, the action ID is output in hex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If it is a Global Script action, the connection to the action name can be made via the GSC runtime application window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The same ID is output in OnErrorExecute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception in cissexecute dwID</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>If there is an error with an action, the action ID is output in hex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If it is a Global Script action, the connection to the action name can be made via the GSC runtime application window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after Execute dwID</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>After executing an action, the action ID is output in hex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If it is a Global Script action, the connection to the action name can be made via the GSC runtime application window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception in new Variant dwID</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Error with return value of an attribute side action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ende Execute dwID</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Action ID processing complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anfang deaktivieren</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Deactivation initiated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ende deaktivieren</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Deactivation complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APDMConnect-Thread said goodbye</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>The thread that prepares the connection between the script control, tag management and other applications was ended unexpectedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begin Start Transaction dwTransID:</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>A new transaction is logged in and the transaction ID output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.2 System messages

Introduction

The following system messages are generated by the script controller and are entered in the Logfiles WinCC_SStart_xx.Log or WinCC_Sys_xx.Log.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trace point</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>no PCode</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A Global Script action or a function contains no executable code (P-Code).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Measures: Compile action or function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error in FunctionName</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Incorrect function name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function %s unknown.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Unknown function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong ReturnTyp</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Return value type is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ende Start Transaction dwTransID:</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Transaction logged in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begin Start TransactionGTI dwTransID:</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>A transaction with cyclic actions or Global Script actions is logged in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begin EndAct</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Transaction logging out initiated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begin EndAct dwTransID:</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Transaction number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ende EndAct ok</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>Transaction logging out completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begin Compile</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Compiler process initiated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>projectpath:</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Compiler: Aplib and Library directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ende Compile</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Compiler process complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>printf aus Aktionen</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Printf() outputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begin Disconnect dwAppID:</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>An application logs out from the script control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChangeFct</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Function was changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LoadFct</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Reloading a function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DirInfo.szProjectLibDir:</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Project functions path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DirInfo.szGlobalLibDir:</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Path of standard functions and internal functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m_szIncludepathProj</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Project path for a compiler include</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m_szIncludepath:</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>General path for a compiler include</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thread said goodbye</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>A job thread has ended unexpectedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception in Request</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>An error has occurred in a request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeout Variable ist nicht gekommen</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Tag request was not answered within 10 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Overview

Legend for the "Type" column:
- 1 = Note
- 2 = Warning
- 3 = Fault

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Short description in Alarm Logging</th>
<th>Text in diagnosis</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1007000</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Overflow</td>
<td>ActionOverflow: more than 10000 Actions to work</td>
<td>Overflow, more than 10000 actions in the queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007001</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error</td>
<td>ExecuteError in Action %s (Functionsname)</td>
<td>An error occurred while processing an action. The Action ID was also output. If it concerns a Global Script action, the connection to the action name can be made via the application window GSC Runtime, as long as the runtime has not been restarted or a Global Script action is saved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007001</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error</td>
<td>10 errors occurs, no more errors will be reported</td>
<td>One of the above faults has occurred 10 times and will no longer be logged for performance reasons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007002</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Overflow</td>
<td>DM_queue overflow</td>
<td>Overflow of an internal list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007003</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Connection error</td>
<td>no connection to server %s (Servername)</td>
<td>The connection to the server is broken. Measure: Start server again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007004</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 1</td>
<td>Function %s (Functions-name) unknown</td>
<td>Unknown function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007004</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 1</td>
<td>10 errors occurs, no more errors will be reported</td>
<td>The above fault has occurred 10 times and will no longer be logged for performance reasons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>no PCode</td>
<td>A Global Script action or a function contains no executable code (P-Code). Measures: Compile action or function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>Error in FunctionName</td>
<td>The function name is incorrect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>wrong ReturnType</td>
<td>The Return value type is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>Fault in LoadAction</td>
<td>Compiler error when loading the action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>Fault in OpenFunktion %s (Dateiname der Funktion)</td>
<td>A function could not be loaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>Fault in LoadFunktion %s (Dateiname der Funktion) error: %s (Fehlerursache)</td>
<td>A function could not be loaded. Measures: Correct the fault cause indicated in the diagnosis entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Short description in Alarm Logging</td>
<td>Text in diagnosis</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>Fault in LoadFunktion new_function: &quot;new_function&quot;: doubly defined function</td>
<td>Two *.fct files are using the same function name in the directory &quot;&lt;Project&gt;\Library&quot;. Measures: When executing menu command &quot;Regenerate header&quot; in the Global Script, you are notified of the duplicate file name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>10 errors occurs, no more errors will be reported</td>
<td>One of the above faults has occurred 10 times and will no longer be logged for performance reasons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007006</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tag error</td>
<td>Variable %s not exist</td>
<td>Requested tag does not exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007006</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tag error</td>
<td>Variable %s timeout</td>
<td>Tag request was not answered within a certain amount of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007006</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Tag error</td>
<td>10 errors occurs, no more errors will be reported</td>
<td>One of the above faults has occurred 10 times and will no longer be logged for performance reasons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>FindFirstFile INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE GetLastError() %d</td>
<td>On multi-user projects, the directory ..\Siemens\WinCC\aplib is enabled with the name SCRIPTFCT. If there is no access to the directory, this entry is found and a second attempt is started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>Alles vorbei INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE GetLastError() %d</td>
<td>The second access attempt failed. The SCRIPTFCT directory and the functions and header files contained within are not available. Possible causes: Network is faulty, no current Service Pack for NT or changed access authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>countall %d in szFolder %s</td>
<td>Number of functions in one directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>before Read Standardfunction</td>
<td>Before reading the standard functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>runtimeproject %s ok(getprojectdir) %d</td>
<td>Project path definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>global %s szProjectLibDir %s</td>
<td>The global path and the project path are output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>count StandardFunctions: %d</td>
<td>Number of standard functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>count StandardFunctions +ProjectFunctions: %d</td>
<td>Number of standard and project functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>DM_NOTIFY_SHUTDOWN</td>
<td>Request, to end runtime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>RemoveClient</td>
<td>A client has disabled the connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>InstallClient ok</td>
<td>Communication Client/Server disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>InstallClient no ok</td>
<td>A client was not able to establish communication with the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info</td>
<td>no client</td>
<td>Client not logged in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Short description in Alarm Logging</td>
<td>Text in diagnosis</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info vor share</td>
<td>vor share</td>
<td>Multi-user project: Before enabling directly ..\Siemens\WinCC\aplib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Info nach share</td>
<td>nach share</td>
<td>Multi-user project: After enabling directly ..\Siemens\WinCC\aplib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007007</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>Deactivation : Action was stopped by script</td>
<td>An action was still running 50 s after ending runtime and was deactivated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007008</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Action error 2</td>
<td>EndAct Timeout</td>
<td>An action was not able to log out within one minute and was therefore ended. Example: An action with a longer runtime was started and changed to another picture. The action will be ended after one minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007009</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Error in thread</td>
<td>Thread said good-bye</td>
<td>A job thread has ended unexpectedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007009</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Error in thread</td>
<td>APDMConnect-Thread said good-bye</td>
<td>The thread that prepares the connection between the script control, tag management and other applications was ended unexpectedly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.1 Software Has a Value

Usage Authorization

With the purchase of the WinCC software you obtain an unrestricted right to usage of the software. You are entitled to our warranty, our support and service.

The software is protected against unlawful use. The programs protected in such a manner can run only in an unrestricted manner when a valid license for the software package has been transferred to the hard disk of the corresponding computer.

Each installed software requires a valid license for unrestricted operation. Without a valid license, WinCC software can only be used in Demo mode.

See also

- Basic license types and license types in WinCC (Page 236)
- Overview of the licensing (Page 232)
### 6.2 Overview of the licensing

#### Introduction

When you purchase the WinCC Basic software package or a WinCC option you obtain license keys in the following form:

- As storage medium with license keys
- Via the Internet (online software delivery)

During the installation of the licenses, the required license keys are copied to the hard disk of the computer. The installed software is released for unrestricted use.

**WinCC ASIA version**

The same conditions apply when you use a WinCC ASIA version. You need a "License Key USB Hardlock" (dongle).

For more information, refer to the WinCC installation notes under "Activating and testing ASIA licenses".

#### Management of the license keys

The supplied program "Automation License Manager" is used to manage the license keys. It allows you to transfer a license key at a later time.

You can also install the Automation License Manager at a later time by means of the WinCC DVD and "Additional software" on a computer without WinCC, such as a license server.

---

**Note**

If you install the Automation License Manager as license server without WinCC, you also need to customize the firewall settings. At least "File and Printer Release" must be enabled in the firewall.

During first transmission of a license key, the Automation License Manager creates a directory "AX NF ZZ" on the hard disk. The directory has the "system" and "hidden" properties and is automatically deleted when the last license key is removed.
A copy protection prevents the copying of license keys to a license data storage medium or hard disk. Encryption technology and alteration of the physical file structure prevent the "functional" copying of a license key for a protected program.

**NOTICE**

*Do not change names and properties of the "AX NF ZZ" directory*

You may change neither the name nor the properties of the "AX NF ZZ" directory because the transferred license keys can be irretrievably lost.

While transferring a WinCC license to the hard disk, a cluster is marked as "defective". Do not attempt to restore this cluster.

Hence you must remove the license keys before each backup or exclude them from the backup.

---

**RT and RC licenses**

WinCC differentiates between RT licenses (Runtime) and RC licenses (Runtime and Configuration) as well as the number of tags.

- **RT licenses** permit the operation of WinCC in Runtime for an unlimited period of time. The editors may only be used in demo mode for a limited period of time.

- **RC licenses** permit the operation of WinCC in Runtime for an unlimited period of time and during configuration.
  
  You can use RC licenses locally or remotely. If an RC license is located on another computer, it is only valid for the configuration. If you want to use Runtime, the RC license must be available locally or you need an additional RT license.

- The number of external tags and archive tags permitted for configuration is indicated by the number in brackets, for example, "WinCC RC (65536)". With this license you can use up to 64*1024 external tags and up to 512 archive tags in Runtime.
  
  The system goes into demo mode if you activate a project where the number of external tags or archive tags exceeds the number of permitted tags. In this case the system behaves as if there were no licenses at all.

**Note**

On a WinCC client, the maximum number of external tags and archive tags is always permitted with an existing RT/RC license because the number of tags is only checked on a server.
Client licensing for "RT Client" and "RC Client"

You can use these licenses for both clients without a custom project as well as for clients with a custom project. Note the following:

- Microsoft SQL Express must be installed.
  If the SQL Standard Server is installed, the "RT Client" license causes display of a license message that requires acknowledgment.

- The database on the client is limited to a maximum of 2 GB due to the use of Microsoft SQL Express.

- The SIMATIC Information Server requires the SQL Standard Server. This means the Information Server cannot be installed on the RT Client PC.

- The Client Upgrade package contains either only the RT Client upgrade or only the RC Client upgrade.
  SIMATIC NET and other options, for example WinCC/WebNavigator, are not included in this Client Upgrade package.

Powerpack

The number of external tags (PowerTags) for a WinCC software configuration can be upgraded with Powerpack:

- Upgrade license for PowerTags (process tags)

For the Powerpack of the PowerTags, we offer the "WinCC RT (...) Powerpack" and "WinCC RC (..) Powerpack" packs.

If the permissible number of PowerTags is exceeded in Runtime, WinCC switches to demo mode.

Note

Use Powerpack only for license upgrade

By using Powerpack, you only increase the number of licensed tags (PowerTags).

The Powerpack cannot be used to operate the WinCC software.

Powerpack installation is possible only once

You can use the Powerpack only once to upgrade the system.

Archive licenses

Archive licenses belong to the basic "Floating" type; however, they always need to be transferred locally to the computer.

You can cumulate archive licenses. If you transfer several single archive licenses locally to a computer, the permitted configuration limits for Runtime are derived from the sum of the individual archive licenses.
The following applies for the counting of the licenses for the archive:

- The tags for the process value archives are counted individually. The number of tags is checked in Runtime.
- The tags for the compressed archives are not included in the license count.
- WinCC User Archive requires a license only for Runtime.
- A license to use 512 archive tags is included in the RT and RC licenses. If you want to use more than 512 archive tags in Runtime, you have to upgrade the system with archive licenses. The 512 archive tags are not cumulated.
- To upgrade archive licenses, you must install additional archive tags. You do not need Powerpack for archive licenses.

**Example: Cumulation of archive licenses**

The table shows an example for gradual expansion of archive tags.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed licenses</th>
<th>Additionally purchased licenses</th>
<th>Licensed archive tags</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WinCC RC (...)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Basic licenses included 512 Archive Tags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC RC (...)</td>
<td>WinCC Archive (1500 Tags)</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>The installed archive license includes the 512 ArchiveTags of the basic license</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC RC (...)</td>
<td>WinCC Archive (5000 Tags)</td>
<td>6500</td>
<td>With an additional archive license, the 1500 ArchiveTags are upgraded to 6500 ArchiveTags.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Avoiding errors when handling licenses**

You have to remove all license keys on the hard disk before you:

- Use a hard disk optimization program that moves fixed blocks.
- Format, compress or restore the hard disk.
- Install a new operating system on the computer.

It is not possible to use compressed hard disks or disk drives.

If a backup contains copies of the license keys, you run the risk that the existing valid license keys are overwritten and therefore destroyed when you restore the backup files on the hard disk.

If you lose a license key, you can try to restore this license again. You can find additional information under: "Restoring license key".

**See also**

[Basic license types and license types in WinCC](Page 236)
6.3 Basic license types and license types in WinCC

Introduction

Each valid license key for WinCC is provided with a 20-digit license number. This number is also transferred by the license medium to the computer when the license key is transferred.

You can have the license numbers with the associated basic license types and license types displayed with the “Automation License Manager” program.

Additional information is available in the online help of the “Automation License Manager”.

Overview

The license keys are displayed in the “Manage” view. The column display depends on the selected view.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LicenseType</th>
<th>Standard license type</th>
<th>License type</th>
<th>Validity</th>
<th>License</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WinCC Cloud Connect</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC Redundancy</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC Server</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC Connectivity Pack</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC Load Balancing</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC WebDebug Client</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC User Archives</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC WebUI Operate</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Count relevant</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>SLCv1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC DataMonitor</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Count relevant</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>SLCv1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC WebNavigator</td>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Count relevant</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>SLCv1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC RC (300800)</td>
<td>Floating</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>SSLv4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Basic license types and license types

The following basic license types and license types are differentiated. The software behaves differently for different types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic license types</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single</td>
<td>Standard license with no time restrictions; you can transfer it to any computer and only use it locally there. The type of use is determined from the Certificate of License (CoL). Licenses of the type &quot;Single&quot; can be upgraded and identified with &quot;SISL&quot; in the license key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Floating                | License with no time restrictions; you can transfer it to any computer and use it there. You can also obtain the license from a license server over the network. If a WinCC RC license is present locally and remotely, WinCC always uses the local license. Read the installation notes of the Information Server to learn about about particular features related to the archive licenses for the SIMATIC Information Server. If the "floating" license is purchased via the network, you must also note the following points:  
  • The Automation License Manager must be installed on the license server.  
  • The license can only be used for configuration.  
  • A WinCC RT or RC license must be available locally on the computer for Runtime.  
  • After disconnection, the program is restarted only after three hours in demo mode.  
  • The first free license on the license server is assigned. You must therefore ensure that sufficient licenses of the "floating" type are available on the license server which license at least the number of tags required in the project. Otherwise, the requesting computer would be switched to demo mode. Example: The WinCC RC (65536) and WinCC RC (128) licenses are located on the license server. If the Automation License Manager uses the smaller license, only 128 tags are licensed. The license for 65 536 tags is not taken into consideration in this case. Licenses of the "Floating" type can be upgraded and identified with "SIFL" in the license key. |
| PowerPack Upgrade       | This license is used to increase the number of PowerTags. Licenses of the "PowerPack Upgrade" type are identified with "SIPP" in the license key. |
| Upgrade                 | This license is used to convert the current software version to a more recent version. Depending on the upgrade package, you can also upgrade several licenses. Licenses of the "Upgrade" type are identified with "SIUP" in the license key. |
### License Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>License Types</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Count relevant</td>
<td>With this license, the use of the software is limited to the number of tags or clients specified in the agreement. In case of several licenses of the &quot;Count Relevant&quot; type, the objects listed under &quot;Validity&quot; are added together. Read the installation notes of the Information Server to learn about particular features related to the archive licenses for the SIMATIC Information Server. The Count Relevant License is identified by &quot;SIFC&quot; or &quot;SISC&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trial</td>
<td>With these licenses, software utilization is limited to the WinCC Trial installation. The use is limited to 30 days from the first day of use. The software may only be used for purposes of testing and validation. The Trial License is identified by &quot;SITT&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master License Key</td>
<td>With this license, the software may be used without restriction. The Master License Key is identified by &quot;SIEL&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### See also

- [WinCC in the Demo Mode](Page 239)
- [Overview of the licensing](Page 232)
6.4 WinCC in the Demo Mode

Reaction to missing license

If a license is missing, WinCC runs in demo mode.

This allows you to operate WinCC for testing and presentation purposes or for local configuration modifications if only one WinCC RT license is available.

To exit WinCC demo mode, install the required licenses.

Note

When you subsequently transfer a license in the demo mode, it first takes effect when you restart WinCC.

Even without a license, process mode is fully functional without loss of data for archiving or alarm logging.

Missing WinCC RC licenses

If WinCC RC licenses are missing, the WinCC Explorer and the editors are terminated after one hour in demo mode.

You can use the editors and save the changes until demo mode expires.

Missing WinCC RT licenses

If WinCC RT licenses are missing, a message which prompts you to acquire a valid license and has to be acknowledged is displayed when you start Runtime.

This message is redisplayed every 10 minutes and must be acknowledged. If the message window is moved, the window reappears again, centered, after 30 minutes at the most.

As long as you are in Runtime, WinCC Explorer is not terminated. On exiting from runtime, WinCC Explorer is also closed.

Missing licenses for WinCC options

If the license keys for WinCC options in use are missing, WinCC switches to demo mode, regardless of whether or not other license keys are available.
6.5 How to manage licenses

Introduction

You manage the WinCC licenses with the Automation License Manager.

You transfer licenses with the Automation License Manager:

- To use licenses on a computer with WinCC.
- To remove licenses from one computer so that the licenses can, for example, be used on another computer.
- To collect licenses on a drive so that the licenses of a WinCC software configuration can be transferred collectively.

Additional information is available in the online help of the “Automation License Manager”.

NOTICE

Write access to the license data storage medium

A write operation to the license data storage medium is performed each time you transfer or remove a WinCC license.

This means the license data storage medium must not be write-protected.

Note

If several licenses are present, WinCC uses the license it finds first. In many cases, this license is not the most powerful license.

Make sure that only one RT license or RC license and not several licenses are transferred.

Example

The following licenses are available on the PC:
- WinCC RC (65536)
- WinCC RC (128)

If the Automation License Manager uses the smaller license, only 128 tags are licensed. The license for 65536 tags is not taken into consideration in this case.

To use all licensed tags, remove the "WinCC RC (128)" license.

Requirement

- Automation License Manager is installed.
- WinCC licenses or the license keys of other SIMATIC software can only be transferred using USB sticks or uncompressed hard disk drives.
- You cannot transfer licenses to RAM drives, disks, compressed hard disk drives, etc.
Transferring the licenses

1. Connect the WinCC license data storage medium with the computer.
2. Open the Automation License Manager in the "Siemens Automation" program group.
3. Select the drive in the navigation window. The WinCC licenses on the license data storage medium are displayed.
4. Select a license from the table. You can select more than one license for transfer.
5. In the shortcut menu of the license select the entry "Transfer.." or drag and drop the licenses. The "Transfer License Key" dialog opens.
6. Select the destination drive and confirm your selection with "OK".
7. The desired license is transferred and written to the destination drive.
8. If necessary, repeat the transfer of licenses from other license data storage media.

Removing the licenses

1. Connect the WinCC license data storage medium with the computer.
2. Open the Automation License Manager in the "Siemens Automation" program group.
3. In the navigation window, select the drive where the license to be deleted is located. The WinCC licenses on the drive are displayed.
4. Select the required license in the table. You can also select multiple licenses for removing.
5. In the shortcut menu of this license select the entry "Transfer.." or drag and drop the licenses. The "Transfer License Key" dialog opens.
6. Select the license data storage medium as the destination drive and confirm your selection with "OK".
7. The desired license is transferred and written to the destination drive.

See also

How to Upgrade Licenses (Page 242)
6.6 How to Upgrade Licenses

Introduction

Install a Powerpack with the Automation License Manager to upgrade the permitted number of external tags (PowerTags).

Note

Powerpack installation is possible only once

You can use a Powerpack only once to upgrade the system.

Upgrading archive tags

If you want to expand the number of available archive tags, install an additional archive license. The procedure is as described under "How to manage licenses" (Page 240).

Requirement

- Automation License Manager is installed.
- Licenses to be upgraded are available on the computer
- PowerPack license key on a license data storage medium:

Procedure

1. Connect the license data storage medium with the computer.
2. Open the Automation License Manager in the "Siemens Automation" program group.
3. In the navigation window, select the drive where the license to be upgraded is located.
4. Select this license from the table.
5. In the shortcut menu of the license, select the entry "License Key > Upgrade...". The upgrade process is started.
6. The upgrade process concludes with the transfer of the upgraded license to the local drive. Additional information is available in the online help of the "Automation License Manager".

See also

How to manage licenses (Page 240)
6.7 Diagnostics of Licensing Problems

License Check

If WinCC continues to switch to demo mode even though the licenses have been transferred, WinCC and the Automation License Manager offer a diagnostic function to check the licenses.

How to check the licenses using WinCC License Analysis

1. In the "Siemens Automation" Windows program group, select the entry "License Analysis". WinCC License Analysis opens.

2. The window displays the installed licenses and the required licenses. Required licenses that are not installed or not adequately dimensioned are highlighted in red.

   Alternatively, open the license analysis in the Taskbar Notification Area from the shortcut menu of the "SIMATIC WinCC" icon.

How to check the licenses using the Automation License Manager

1. Open the Automation License Manager in the "Siemens Automation" program group.
2. Select the "Management" view in the Automation License Manager.
3. Select the storage location of the license key in the navigation window. The available license keys are displayed.
4. Select the license key to be checked in the table.
5. Select the "Check" option from the shortcut menu. The license is checked and the result of the check is indicated in the table by means of a status icon.
The "License.Log" and "LicenseLog.xml" diagnostic files

The "License.Log" and "LicenseLog.xml" diagnostic files display the licenses called by WinCC. If a license is missing, a corresponding entry is shown.

The files are located in the WinCC installation path in the "diagnose" folder that is automatically set up when WinCC is run for the first time.

Note

If the license for a WinCC option in use is missing, WinCC switches to demo mode.

See also

WinCC in the Demo Mode (Page 239)
6.8 Restore license key

Introduction

A license key is defective if:

- The license on the hard disk can no longer be accessed.
- The key can no longer be found during the transfer to the license data storage medium.

Restore

The license key can be restored through the "Support for License Management".
To contact your local agent for "Automation & Drives", search our contact database on the Internet under:


Required information

If you contact "Support for License Management", have the following information ready:

- Company data (Name, Address, Country, Telephone/Fax...)
- Numerical inquiry code
- With regard to the license data storage medium:
  - Article number of the product (e.g. "6AV...")
  - Product designation in plain text
  - Serial number (license number).

You can find this information on the "Certificate of License" (CoL).

See also

Basic license types and license types in WinCC (Page 236)
Internet: Contact person database (http://www.automation.siemens.com/partner/index.asp)
Licensing

6.8 Restore license key
Performance Data

7.1 Performance Data

Contents

This chapter provides important technical specifications and performance limits for WinCC V7.5.
7.2 Configurations

Quantity structure in a multi-user system

The performance of the WinCC system depends on the employed hardware and the volume of process data.

The following configurations were tested as typical scenarios:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server or redundant server pairs</td>
<td>18 servers</td>
<td>WinCC client with its own project: Access to a maximum of 18 WinCC servers or redundant server pairs. The mixed configuration of WinCC servers which access other WinCC servers as clients has not been approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC clients without their own project</td>
<td>32 Clients</td>
<td>Maximum of 64 WinCC clients without their own project in the WinCC system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinCC clients with their own project</td>
<td>32 Clients</td>
<td>Maximum of 50 WinCC clients with their own project in the WinCC system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration example 1</td>
<td>32 clients + 3 Web clients</td>
<td>WinCC clients with their own project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration example 2</td>
<td>1 client + 150 Web clients</td>
<td>WinCC client with its own project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) When the server is also used as an operator station, the number of clients for this server is reduced to four.

You can find additional information in the WinCC Information System under:

- "Configurations > Multi-User Systems > Typical Configurations"
- "Configurations > Multi-User Systems > Quantity Structures and Performance"

2) If multi-VGA is used, the number of WinCC clients may be reduced. In this case also note potential performance limitations caused by the number and complexity of the process pictures.

We recommend limiting the number of monitors to 60.
7.3 Graphics System

Configuration

Observe the following restrictions:

- The number and complexity of the objects used affect the performance.
- PDL files larger than 100 MB are not displayed in WinCC Runtime.
- The performance data can be limited by system resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Objects per picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levels per picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictures (PDL files) per project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instances of fixed faceplates in a process picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture size in pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nesting levels of picture objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of colors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Runtime

The performance data depends on the hardware implemented.

Process pictures with the following values were tested as typical scenario:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change picture from empty screen to...</th>
<th>Time, in seconds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture with standard objects (100 objects)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture with 2 480 I/O fields (8 internal tags)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture with 1 000 I/O fields (1 000 internal tags)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture of 10 MByte size (bitmap)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message window</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table with 4 columns, each with 120 values ¹</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹) The specified values apply to data from "Tag Logging Fast".

Note

Notes on configuration for WinCC projects

Observe the notes on "Configurations > Multi-User Systems > Quantity Structures and Performance"
7.4 Message system

Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configurable messages per server/single-user station</td>
<td>150 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process tags per message line</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User text blocks per message line</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message classes (incl. system message classes)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message types per message class</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message priorities</td>
<td>17 (0...16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Runtime

The performance data can be limited by system resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Runtime</th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Messages per message archive</td>
<td>No limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages per short-term archive list</td>
<td>1 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages per long-term archive list</td>
<td>1 000 ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages per message window</td>
<td>5 000 ²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous message load without loss (single-user station/server)</td>
<td>10/sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message surge (single-user station/server)</td>
<td>2 000/10 sec every 5 min ³</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) On single-user station or server or on client, per server or per redundant server pair, if "LongTimeArchiveConsistency" is set to "no". On single-user station, server, client or redundant server pair, if "LongTimeArchiveConsistency" is set to "yes".

2) On single-user station or server or on client, per server or per redundant server pair.

3) If the interval to the next message surge is under five minutes, messages may be lost.

Note

The message overload and continuous message surge can be created simultaneously on a single-user station or server.
7.5 Archiving system

Configuration

The following maximum values are recommended for the display of archive values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trend window or diagram window per picture</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configurable trends per trend window</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar diagrams per diagram window</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tables per picture</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columns per table</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Values per table</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archives per single user/server</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archive tags per single-user station/server 1)</td>
<td>80,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Dependent on number of licensed archive tags (ArchivTags).

Note

In cases of a combination of the maximum values, high picture selection times can occur.

Runtime

The archiving performance is influenced by multiple factors, for example:

- Number of values that are archived with Tag Logging Fast and Tag Logging Slow. *)
  If necessary, reduce the archived values of the databases.

- Signing of data
  The archive signing, segment sizes as well as frequent segment changes can impact the performance.

- Data sources used, which means the type and number of controllers / CPUs, OPC servers, etc.
  If necessary, check the performance of the data sources.

- System configuration of the servers, which means operating system, drive type, work memory, etc.

*) Tag Logging Fast: Archive tags with archiving cycles < 1 minute; Tag Logging Slow: Archive tags with archiving cycles > 1 minute.
Example configurations

The following configurations were tested as typical scenarios:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mean value: Archive tags / second 1) 2)</th>
<th>Archiving cycle: Distribution of archive tags</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 ms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small configuration: Single station system</td>
<td>2500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium configuration: Server-client system</td>
<td>15000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large configuration: Distributed system with redundant server</td>
<td>30000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) The performance tag "@PRF_TLGRT_AVERAGE_TAGS_PER_SECOND" provides the average number of archived tags/second.

2) System load through process picture display: Approximately 5% - 10% of the archive values are displayed in WinCC OnlineTrendControls and WinCC OnlineTableControls.

Hardware used

The following hardware was used in the example configurations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Server / single-user PC 3)</th>
<th>IPC</th>
<th>Data source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Standard PC: Intel i5, 8 GB, standard HDD</td>
<td>IPC347E</td>
<td>1 controller, e.g. CPU S7-1516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Small server: Intel i7, 16 GB, SSD</td>
<td>IPC847D, IPC547G</td>
<td>2 to 10 controllers, e.g. CPU S7-1516, S7-1517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large</td>
<td>Large server: Intel Xeon, 32 GB, Raid system, SSD</td>
<td>IPC847D</td>
<td>More than 10 controllers, e.g. CPU S7-1517, S7-1518</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) A major factor is the performance and write speed of the hard disk.

Performance tags

The "@PRF_..." system tags provide values regarding the performance when reading, writing and archiving tags.

You can find additional information in the WinCC Information System under "Working with WinCC > Working with Projects > Making Settings for Runtime > System Diagnostics with Performance Tags"
7.6 User archives

Configuration

The performance data can be limited by system resources. The fields of the user archives are mapped as columns in the WinCC Configuration Studio.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total archives</td>
<td>No limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User archive fields ¹)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data records per user archive</td>
<td>10 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User archive views</td>
<td>No limit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹) Maximum 1 000 000 fields total.

Runtime

The following measurement values are guideline values for WinCC user archives in Runtime. The values depend on the hardware used and the configuration.

Limit conditions

Configuration of the user archives in the WinCC project used:

• One WinCC tag per field
• 1 000 000 entries each:
  – 100 fields with 10 000 data records.
  – 500 fields with 2 000 data records.

Determined Values (approx.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>10 fields</th>
<th>500 fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture change from a neutral picture to a picture with a linked UserArchiveControl. Measurement result depends on the fill level of the control: Full display takes up to 15 seconds during the first load or in the case of large configuration changes in the user archive.</td>
<td>1 second</td>
<td>5 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read record: Click the control button to read the value to the corresponding tags.</td>
<td>1 - 2 seconds ¹)</td>
<td>n seconds ²)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write record: Click the control button to write the value to the corresponding tags and display the tag contents in I/O fields.</td>
<td>1 - 3 seconds ¹)</td>
<td>n seconds ²)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus change from first to last record.</td>
<td>1 - 2 seconds</td>
<td>1 - 2 seconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹) 10 fields with a total of 10 tags.
²) 500 fields with a total of 500 tags.
Performance Data

7.6 User archives
7.7 Reports (Report Designer)

Configuration

The performance data can be limited by system resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configurable reports</td>
<td>No limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report lines per group</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tags per report ¹)</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹) The number of tags per report is dependent on the performance of the process communication.

Runtime

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simultaneously running message sequence reports per server/client</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simultaneously running message archive reports</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.8 Scripting with VBS and ANSI-C

Runtime

The performance data can also be influenced by the following factors:

- Hardware used
- Type of configuration
- Running processes, for example, Tag Logging or Alarm Logging

The following measured values indicate the difference between VB scripting and C scripting based on the comparison of orientation values.

The following configuration was tested as typical scenario:

Typical configuration

For example: Windows 7 (64-bit), Intel Core i7-2600 (3.4 GHz), 8 GB RAM

The measured values are specified in milliseconds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>VBS</th>
<th>ANSI-C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set color of 1 000 rectangles</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>1 900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set output value of 200 I/O fields</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a picture with 1 000 static texts which determine the object name and issue it as return value</td>
<td>460</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read 1 000 internal tags</td>
<td>920</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-read 1 000 internal tags</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conduct 100 000 calculations 1)</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Calculations in the example:

**VBS**

For i=1 To 100000  
value=Cos(50)*i  
Next

**ANSI-C**

for (i=1; i<=100000; i++)  
{  
dValue=cos(50)*i;  
}
7.9 Process Communication

Introduction

The following table provides information on the possible configurations and maximum number of connections.

Note

System configuration and performance

The limit values listed in the table are also dependent on the performance capability of your system and the quantity structure of the WinCC project (e.g. number of process values/time unit).

You use the WinCC performance tags to analyze the time behavior of the server and the communication channels.

Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Communication channels in WinCC ¹</th>
<th>PC-based ²</th>
<th>MPI/Profibus Soft-Net ³</th>
<th>MPI/Profibus Hard-Net ³</th>
<th>Industrial Ethernet Soft-Net ³</th>
<th>Industrial Ethernet Hard-Net ³</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite ¹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• MPI</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Soft-PLC</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Slot-PLC</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Profibus (1)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Profibus (2)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Named connections</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet ISO L4 (1)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet ISO L4 (2)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet TCP/IP</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC S7-1200 ⁶</td>
<td>64 ⁵</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC S7-1500 ⁶</td>
<td>128 ⁵</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC S5 Programmers Port</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• AS 511</td>
<td>2 ⁴</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC S5 Serial 3964R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• RK 512</td>
<td>2 ⁴</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC S5 Profibus FDL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• FDL</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC S5 Ethernet Layer 4 + TCP/IP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet ISO L4 (2)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet ISO L4 (2)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet TCP/IP</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Remarks

1) In principle, all communication channels can be combined with each other. However, the subordinate communication drivers can lead to limitations.

When the SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite is used, a maximum of 64 S7 connections can be operated. A typical configuration contains 60 S7 connections, for example.

Examples:
- 8 S7 connections via "MPI" and 52 S7 connections via "Industrial Ethernet TCP/IP"
- 60 S7 connections via "Industrial Ethernet TCP/IP"

2) COM1/COM2 or internal software interfaces for SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite communication "Soft-PLC" and "Slot-PLC" as well as DCOM for OPC.

3) In the case of Soft-Net, communication runs on the PC processor. In the case of Hard-Net, the communication card has its own microprocessor and relieves the PC processor during communication.

### Communication channels in WinCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Communication channels in WinCC</th>
<th>PC-based</th>
<th>MPI/Profibus Soft-Net</th>
<th>MPI/Profibus Hard-Net</th>
<th>Industrial Ethernet Soft-Net</th>
<th>Industrial Ethernet Hard-Net</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC 505 Serial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• NITP / TBP</td>
<td>2 4)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC 505 Ethernet Layer 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet ISO L4 (1)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet ISO L4 (2)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMATIC 505 Ethernet TCP/IP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Industrial Ethernet TCP/IP</td>
<td>--- 5)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profibus DP (V0-Master)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DP 1</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DP 2</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DP 3</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DP 4</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen Bradley - Ethernet IP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• CAMP 7)</td>
<td>--- 5)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitsubishi Ethernet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• MELSEC Communication Protocol (MC protocol)</td>
<td>--- 5)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modbus TCP/IP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Modbus TCP/IP</td>
<td>--- 5)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Data Access</td>
<td>--- 5)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• XML-DA</td>
<td>--- 5)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPC Unified Architecture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Data Access</td>
<td>--- 5)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Only a Soft-Net module may be operated in the PC for the process communication. Combinations with Hard-Net communication cards are possible. The driver software for Hard-Net communication cards are supplied with the SIMATIC NET CDs enclosed.

Hard-Net communication cards enable the parallel operation of up to 2 protocols, e.g. Ethernet communication using the SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite and SIMATIC S5-Ethernet. In this case, a reduction of approx. 20% of the table values must be taken into account.

Example:

- 40 connections using the "SIMATIC S7 Protocol Suite" combination and 8 connections via "SIMATIC S5 Ethernet".

4) Depending on the number of serial interfaces. Can be expanded using communication cards with several serial interfaces, e.g. Digi-Board with 8/16 ports.

5) Communication takes place via the standard Ethernet port of the computer or corresponding Siemens communications processors.

The maximum possible number of connections is limited by the available system resources and their performance data, particularly CPU, RAM, Ethernet connection.

6) Note the maximum number of WinCC systems (see table: "SIMATIC S7-1200, S7-1500 Channel" channel).

7) CAMP = Common ASCII Message Protocol

"SIMATIC S7-1200, S7-1500 Channel" channel

Maximum number of WinCC systems per CPU:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CPU &quot;S7-12xx&quot;</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>CPU &quot;S7-15xx&quot;</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S7-12xx V2.2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S7-1511</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S7-12xx V3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>S7-1513</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S7-12xx V4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>S7-1515</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>S7-1516</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Maximum number of tags in runtime

The maximum number of tags that are simultaneously being used in the connection must not be exceeded permanently.

You can read off the number of tags used in runtime in the WinCC Channel Diagnosis under "Plc Attributes (free/max)". If several HMI devices access a controller, this value applies to all HMI devices together.
Performance Data

7.9 Process Communication
Index

A
Access right, 27, 31, 32
ActiveX Control, 65
  Display in Internet Explorer, 55
Alarm Logging, 76
ANSI-C, 256
  Performance, 256
ApDiag, 201, 202
  Diagnostics, 203, 205, 206, 207, 210, 213
  Diagnostics level, 205, 223, 226
  Diagnostics tag, 213
  Info, 204, 215, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223
  Menu bar, 203
  Output, 204, 214, 215
  Output window, 224
  Profile, 210
  System messages, 227
  Text file, 207
  Trace points, 205, 223, 226
Archive, 251
  Configuration limits, 251
Archive configuration, 67
Archive system, 63
Archive tag, 67
Archiving, 251
  Configuration limits, 251
Area names in distributed systems, 76
Automation License Manager, 232

B
Barcode, 66

C
CAL, 78
CAS
  Migration to Process Historian, 172
CCAgent, 26
Channel, 257
  Quantity structure, 257
Client, 185, 248
  Migration, 185
  Number of servers, 248
  Operating system, 19
  Remote access, 25, 83
Client Access License, 78
Cluster, 56
Color palette, 54
  Change, 54
Communication, 257
  IPv4 protocol, 70
  Quantity structure, 257
Communication drivers, 9, 19
Communication process, 70
Compatibility, 50
Component, 9, 38, 40
  Communication drivers, 9
  Components supplied, 9
Configuration limits, 248
  Archiving, 251
  Clients, 248
  Multi-user system, 248
  Process data, 251
  Server, 248
  Table, 251
  Trends, 251
  WinCC clients, 248
Connection interruption, 56
Connectivity Pack
  Licensing, 78
Customer support, (See support)

D
DataMonitor
  Client, (See DataMonitor client)
  Installation requirements, 83
DataMonitor client, 83, 85
  Installation, 85, 88
DataMonitor server, 83
  Installation, 88
DCF file
  Create, 64
DCOM configuration, 53
Demo Mode, 11
Demo Project, 114
DHCP server, 56
Diagnosis
  ApDiag, (See ApDiag)
  Diagnostics, 200
  Migration, 200
  Support request, 133
  Diagnostics client, 99, (See WebNavigator diagnostics client)
Single, 236
Upgrade, 236
Upgrading, 242
WebNavigator diagnostics client, 99
WinCC License Analysis, 243
License Agreement, 11
License type, 11
Licensing, 232
  Automation License Manager, 232
  Error avoidance, 235
  Powerpack, 232

M
Manual detachment, 56
Menu bar
  ApDiag, 203
Message, 250
  Quantity structure, 250
Message archive, 250
  Quantity structure, 250
Message system, 250
  Quantity structure, 250
Microsoft Message Queuing, 34, 78
  MSMQ Server, 34, 78
Microsoft SQL Server, 56
Microsoft SQL Server 2014, 11, 13, 44
Microsoft SQL Server, 24
Migration, 76
  Cancelation, 200
  Client project, 185
  Clients, 185
  Converting project data, 172
  Diagnostics, 200
  Diagnostics Files, 200
  Error Messages, 200
  Migrating WinCC projects as of V7.0, 181
  Multi-user project, 185
  Ongoing operation, 188
  Redundancy, 188
  Redundant system, 188
  Requirements, 178
  Runtime, 188
Mitsubishi Ethernet
  Information on communication, 71
MS Message Queuing, 34, 78
MSMQ Server, 34, 78
Multilanguage, 53
  Installation, 53
Multi-user project, 185
  Migration, 185
Multi-user system, 248
  Configuration limits, 248

N
Netware, 53
  Novell Netware client, 53
Network adapter, 56
  Energy-saving mode, 56
Network client, 53
Network connection, 56
  Speed, 56
Network drive, 56
Network engineering, 56
  Access via RAS, 56
  DHCP server, 56
  IP address, 56
  ISDN router, 56
  Network adapter, 56
  Network client, 53
  Network server, 56
  Notebook, 56
  Novell client software, 53
  Supported network protocols, 56
  TCP/IP protocol, 56
  WinCC in multiple domains, 56
  WinCC within a domain, 56
Network protocol, 56
  Supported network protocols, 56
  TCP/IP, 56
Network server, 56
Notebook, 56
Notes, 50
  For operation, 50
  Novell Netware client, 53

O
Online Help, 53
  Internet Explorer, 118
  Runtime, 53
Online support, (See support)
OPC, 68
  Historical Data Access, 69
  XML Data Access, 68
OPC A&E, 69
  OPC source, 69
OPC A&E server, 69
OPC UA
  Information on communication, 71
  Raw data tag, 71
OPC_E_MAXEXCEEDED, 69
Operating system, 19, 53
  Access rights, 27
  Prevent access, 25
Operation, 49
  Domain, 19

P
PDF files, 9
Performance
  Action configuring, 256
  Functions, 256
  Scripting, 256
Performance data, 248, 250, 251, 253, 255, 256, 257
Picture Tree, 76
Pictures, 249
  Quantity Structure, 249
Preferred server, 56
  Connection interruption, 56
Process communication,
  Quantity structure, 257
Process coupling, 257
  Quantity structure, 257
Process data, 251
  Configuration limits, 251
Project
  Converting project data, 172
  Include in user group, 32
  Migrate, 181
Project path, (See: Folder)
Proxy, 56

Q
Quantity Structure
  Communication,
  Graphics System, 249
  Message system,
  Pictures, 249
Process communication,
  Process coupling,
Report,
  Scripting,
User archive,
User archives,

R
RAS, 56
RDP, 73
Redundancy, 56, 188
  Configuration of standard gateway, 75
  Migrate, 188
  Redundant server, 56
  Upgrading during operation, 188
Release
  Folder, 28
  Release share, (See: Folder share)
Remote access, 25
Remote Desktop Protocol, 73
Removal, 44
  Performing, 44
Report, 255
  Quantity structure, 255
Requirement, 16
  Hardware, 17, 83, 96
  Installation, 83, 96
  Operating system, 19, 83, 96
  Software, 19, 83, 96
Runtime, 56
  Displaying online help, 53
  Server failure, 56

S
S5 PROFIBUS DP
  Information on communication, 72
S7 Protocol Suite, 70
  Information on communication, 70
  Time change with AR_SEND, 70
S7DOS, 70
Safety, 25, 27
Scope of delivery, 9
Screen, 54
  Screen resolution, 54
  Screen savers, 50
Security Controller, 36
  Security policy, 33
Server, 248
  Number of clients, 248
  Operating system, 19
Server prefix, 56
ServiceMode
  Migration, 172
Share, 27, (See: Folder share)
Signature
  Electronic signature, 66
SIMATIC 505 TCPIP
  Information on communication, 72
SIMATIC HMI, 27, 31, 32
  User group, 27
SIMATIC Manager
  User Rights, 27
SIMATIC Security Controller, 36
Software, 19
  Requirement, 19, 83, 96
SQL master database, 56
Start menu, 36
Supplementary installation, 40, 41
  Languages, 41
  Performing, 40, 41
Support, 130, 133
Support request, 133
System diagnostics, 133
System message
  ApDiag, 227
System stability, 62

T
Table, 251
  Configuration limits, 251
Tag
  Diagnostics tag, 213
Tags with @ prefix, 76
TCP/IP protocol, 56
Technical support, (See support)
Terminal bus
  Large amounts of data, 67
Terminal service, 101
Time synchronization, 63
Toolbar, 25
Trends, 251
  Configuration limits, 251

U
Unicode, 176
Uninterruptible power supply, 56
Unsigned driver, 33
Unsigned file, 33
Upgrade, 105, 106
Upgrade installation, 11, 47
  Performing, 47
UPS, 56
User archive, 253
  Quantity structure, 253
User archives, 253
  Quantity structure, 253
User authorization, 77
User group, 27
  Domain-global user group, 31
Include project, 32
SIMATIC HMI, 27, 31, 32

V
VBA, 67
VBS, 256
  Performance, 256
Virtualization, 18
Virus scanner, 50
Visual Basic Script in WinCC, 256

W
Web client, (See WebNavigator client)
WebNavigator
  Demo Project, 114
  DVD contents, 96
  Installation requirements, 96
  Licenses, 99
WebNavigator client, 96, 111, 112
  Installation, 106
  Installation under the Windows Server, 106
  Licenses, 99
  Upgrade, 106
WebNavigator diagnostics client, 96
  Installation,
WebNavigator server, 96
  Installation, 105
  Licenses, 99
  Upgrade, 105
WebUX
  Configuring the WebUX web page, 125
  Installation, 123
  Licensing, 121, 123
  Reserve license, 121
  Using WebUX, 125
WinCC, 56, 81
  General information, 61
  Installation, 9, 16, 33
  Installation requirements, 17, 19
  Limit access, 27
  Notebook, 56
  Performing installation, 36
  Performing supplementary installation, 40, 41
  Preparing the installation, 33
  Remote access, 25
  Removing, 44
  Unicode, 176
  Upgrade, 46
  Upgrading an installation, 47
Use in multiple domains, 56
Use within a domain, 56
WinCC DVD, 9
WinCC client, 248
Number of servers, 248
WinCC DataMonitor client, (See DataMonitor client)
WinCC DataMonitor server, (See DataMonitor Server)
WinCC DVD, 9
WinCC License Analysis, 243
WinCC project
  Include in user group, 32
  Migrate, 181
WinCC ServiceMode, 77
WinCC V6.x, 46
WinCC WebNavigator, (See: WebNavigator)
WinCC/WebNavigator client, (See WebNavigator client)
WinCC/WebNavigator server, (See WebNavigator server)
WinCC-OPC-UA
  Information on communication, 71
Windows, 19, 27
  Access rights, 27
  Microsoft Message Queuing, 34, 78
  Operation under Windows, 49
  Preparation the installation of WinCC, 33
  Security policy, 33
  Toolbar, 25
  User Rights, 27
Windows 7, 19
Windows 8.1, 19
Windows event display, 44
Windows Server 2012, 19
Windows Start menu, 36
Windows taskbar, 53
  Prevent display, 53